

---

# **F5 Firewall Solutions Documentation**

**F5 Networks, Inc.**

**Feb 25, 2020**



## Agility 2020 Hands-on Lab Guide





## **Contents:**

<b>1</b>	<b>Class 1: AFM – The Data Center Firewall</b>	<b>5</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>Advanced Multi-Layer Firewall Protection</b>	<b>99</b>
<b>3</b>	<b>Class - F5 BIG-IP DDoS and DNS DoS Protections</b>	<b>165</b>
<b>4</b>	<b>Flowmon Integrated Out-of-path DDoS Solution</b>	<b>207</b>



## Class 1: AFM – The Data Center Firewall

### 1.1 Getting Started

Please follow the instructions provided by the instructor to start your lab and access your jump host.

---

**Note:** All work for this lab will be performed exclusively from the Windows jumphost. No installation or interaction with your local system is required.

---

#### 1.1.1 Lab Topology

The training lab is accessed over remote desktop connection.

Your administrator will provide login credentials and the URL.

Within each lab environment there are the following Virtual Machines:

- **Windows 7 Jumpbox**
  - username: external\_user password: P@ssw0rd!
- **Two BIG-IP Virtual Editions (VE) – running TMOS 15.1**
  - username: admin password: f5DEMOs4u
- **LAMP Server (Web Servers)**

F5 Products <span>+ ADD</span>	Subnets <span>+ ADD</span>	Systems <span>+ ADD</span>
<div>bigip02 BIGIP 15.0.0-0.0.39</div> <div>▶ Running</div> <div>ACCESS ▾ DETAILS</div>	<div>Management 10.1.1.0/24</div> <div>▶ Running</div> <div>DETAILS</div>	<div>Windows Jumpbox Windows</div> <div>▶ Running</div> <div>ACCESS ▾ DETAILS</div>
<div>bigip01 BIGIP 15.0.0-0.0.39</div> <div>▶ Running</div> <div>ACCESS ▾ DETAILS</div>	<div>Subnet 10 10.1.10.0/24</div> <div>▶ Running</div> <div>DETAILS</div>	<div>LAMP v4 Ubuntu</div> <div>▶ Running</div> <div>ACCESS ▾ DETAILS</div>
	<div>Subnet 20 10.1.20.0/24</div> <div>▶ Running</div> <div>DETAILS</div>	

## Lab Components

Below are all the IP addresses that will be used during the labs. Please refer back to this page and use the IP addresses assigned to your site.

	IP Addresses
Lampserver	10.1.20.11, 10.1.20.12, 10.1.20.13 ,10.1.20.14, 10.1.20.15

## 1.2 Lab 1 – Advanced Firewall Manager (AFM)

### 1.2.1 Lab Overview

During this lab, you will configure the BIG-IP system to permit traffic to multiple backend servers. You will then run simulated user flows against BIG-IP and verify the traffic flow, reporting and logging of these flows.

### 1.2.2 Base BIG-IP Configuration

In this lab, the VE has been configured with the basic system settings and the VLAN/self-IP configurations required for the BIG-IP to communicate and pass traffic on the network. Inspect the Virtual Servers which have been configured. Note that they are Wwildcard (listen for all traffic) and have SNAT auto-map enabled. We'll now need to configure the BIG-IP to pass it to the back-end server.

### 1.2.3 Advanced Firewall Manager

Welcome to Initech! Today is your first day as the principal firewall engineer, congratulations! The employee you are replacing, Milton, is rumored to be sitting on a beach in Key West sipping Mai Tai's and took his red stapler but left no documentation. . .

The marketing team, now led by Bill Lumbergh, launched a new campaign for Initech's TPS reports overnight and no one can access the web server. The only information the web server administrators know is that the IP address of the Web server is 10.30.0.50 and that Mr. Lumbergh is furious the world does not know about the glory of TPS reports!!

Let's start by testing the web server to verify. On your workstation open a browser (we prefer you use the Chrome shortcut labeled BIG-IP UI, all the tabs are pre-populated) and enter the address of the web server (<http://10.1.20.11>). No Bueno! Let's see if we can even ping the host. Launch a command prompt (startrun cmd) and type 'ping 10.1.20.11'. Bueno! Looks like the server is up and responding to pings, as such, this is likely not a network connectivity issue.

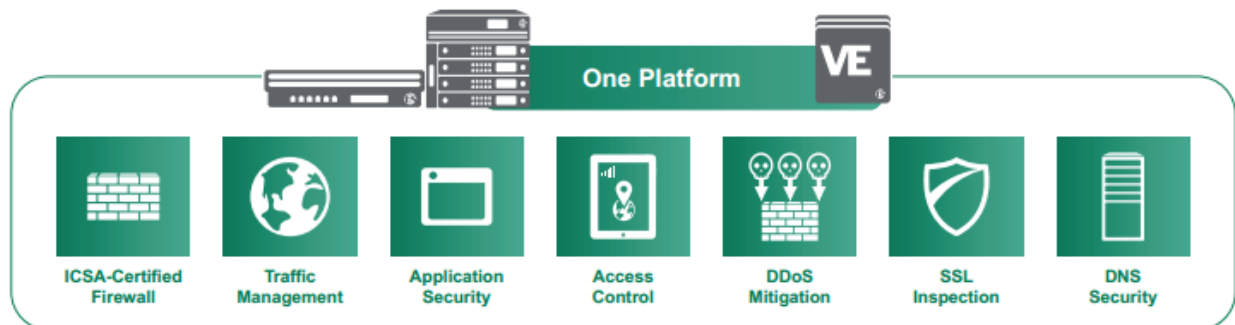
You ask one of your colleagues, who just got out of his meeting with the Bob's, if he knows the IP address of the firewall. He recalls the firewall they would traverse for this communication is bigip01.f5demo.com and its management IP address is 10.1.1.4. In your browser, open a new tab and navigate to <https://10.1.1.4>. The credentials to log into the device are username: admin and password: f5DEMOs4u (these can also be found on the login banner of the device for convenience). Note if you receive a security warning it is ok to proceed to the site and add as a trusted site.

F5? F5 makes a data center firewall? Maybe I should do a little reading about what the F5 firewall is before I proceed deeper into the lab...

## 1.2.4 Advanced Firewall Manager (AFM)

Advanced Firewall Manager (AFM) is a module that was added to TMOS in version 11.3. F5 BIG-IP Advanced Firewall Manager™ (AFM) is a high-performance ICSA certified, stateful, full-proxy network firewall designed to guard data centers against incoming threats that enter the network on the most widely deployed protocols—including HTTP/S, SMTP, DNS, SIP, and FTP.

By aligning firewall policies with the applications, they protect, BIG-IP AFM streamlines application deployment, security, and monitoring. With its scalability, security and simplicity, BIG-IP AFM forms the core of the F5 application delivery firewall solution.



Some facts below about AFM and its functionality:

- Advanced Firewall Manager (AFM) provides “Shallow” packet inspection while Application Security Manager (ASM) provides “Deep” packet inspection. By this we mean that AFM is concerned with source IP address and port, destination IP address and port, and protocol (this is also known as 5-tuple/quintuple filtering).
- AFM is used to allow/deny a connection before deep packet inspection ever takes place, think of it as the first line of firewall defense.
- AFM is many firewalls in one. You can apply L4 firewall rules to ALL addresses on the BIG-IP or you can specify BIG-IP configuration objects (route domains, virtual server, self-IP, and Management-IP).

- AFM runs in 2 modes: **ADC mode** and **Firewall mode**. **ADC mode** is called a “blacklist”, all traffic is allowed to BIG-IP except traffic that is explicitly DENIED (this is a negative security model). **Firewall mode** is called a “whitelist”, all traffic is denied to BIG-IP except traffic that is explicitly ALLOWED. The latter is typically used when the customer only wants to use us as a firewall or with LTM.
- We are enabling “SERVICE DEFENSE IN DEPTH” versus traditional “DEFENSE IN DEPTH”. This means, instead of using multiple shallow and deep packet inspection devices inline increasing infrastructure complexity and latency, we are offering these capabilities on a single platform.
- AFM is an ACL based firewall. In the old days, we used to firewall networks using simple packet filters. With a packet filter, if a packet doesn't match the filter it is allowed (not good). With AFM, if a packet does not match criteria, the packet is dropped.
- AFM is a stateful packet inspection (SPI) firewall. This means that BIG-IP is aware of new packets coming to/from BIG-IP, existing packets, and rogue packets.
- AFM adds more than 100 L2-4 denial of service attack vector detections and mitigations. This may be combined with ASM to provide L4-7 protection.
- Application Delivery Firewall is the service defense in depth layering mentioned earlier. On top of a simple L4 network firewall, you may add access policy and controls from L4-7 with APM (Access Policy Manager), or add L7 deep packet inspection with ASM (web application firewall), You can add DNS DOS mitigation with LTM DNS Express and GTM + DNSSEC. These modules make up the entire Application Delivery Firewall (ADF) solution.

### 1.2.5 Creating AFM Network Firewall Rules

For this lab, you will complete the following sections:

#### Default Actions

The BIG-IP® Network Firewall provides policy-based access control to and from address and port pairs, inside and outside of your network. Using a combination of contexts, the network firewall can apply rules in many ways, including: at a global level, on a per-virtual server level, and even for the management port or a self IP address. Firewall rules can be combined in a firewall policy, which can contain multiple context and address pairs, and is applied directly to a virtual server.

By default, the Network Firewall is configured in **ADC mode**, a default allow configuration, in which all traffic is allowed through the firewall, and any traffic you want to block must be explicitly specified.

The system is configured in this mode by default so all traffic on your system continues to pass after you provision the Advanced Firewall Manager. You should create appropriate firewall rules to allow necessary traffic to pass before you switch the Advanced Firewall Manager to Firewall mode. In **Firewall mode**, a default deny configuration, all traffic is blocked through the firewall, and any traffic you want to allow through the firewall must be explicitly specified.

This lab has been pre-configured in **Firewall mode**.

You can change the BIG-IP AFM Network Firewall mode by modifying the Default Firewall Action setting. When you enable Firewall mode, the AFM system allows access only when specific firewall rules are put in place. While this method reduces the overall attack surface, it may impact services that you are not be aware of. ADC mode is currently the default and most popular choice. These steps change the AFM mode from the default ADC mode to firewall mode.

The BIG-IP® Network Firewall provides policy-based access control to and from address and port pairs, inside and outside of your network. By default, the network firewall is configured in ADC mode, which is a **default allow** configuration, in which all traffic is allowed to virtual servers and self IPs on the system, and

any traffic you want to block must be explicitly specified. This applies only to the Virtual Server & Self IP level on the system.

---

**Important:** Even though the system is in a default allow configuration, if a packet matches no rule in any context on the firewall, a Global Drop rule drops the traffic.

---

## Rule Hierarchy

With the BIG-IP® Network Firewall, you use a context to configure the level of specificity of a firewall rule or policy. For example, you might make a global context rule to block ICMP ping messages, and you might make a virtual server context rule to allow only a specific network to access an application.

Context is processed in this order:

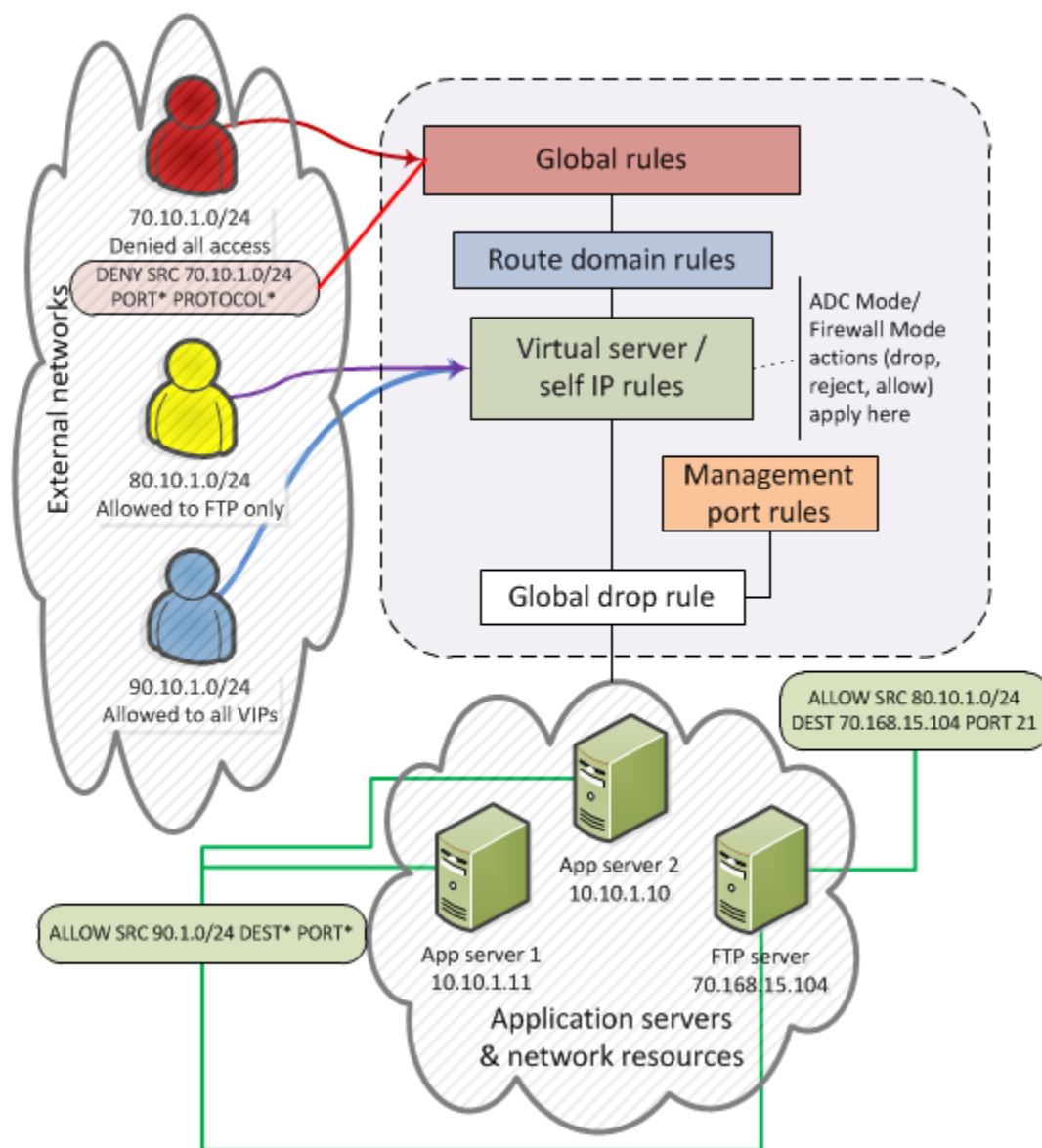
- Global
- Route domain
- Virtual server / self IP
- Management port\*
- Global drop\*

The firewall processes policies and rules in order, progressing from the global context, to the route domain context, and then to either the virtual server or self IP context. Management port rules are processed separately, and are not processed after previous rules. Rules can be viewed in one list, and viewed and reorganized separately within each context. You can enforce a firewall policy on any context except the management port. You can also stage a firewall policy in any context except management.

---

**Tip:** You cannot configure or change the Global Drop context. The Global Drop context is the final context for traffic. Note that even though it is a global context, it is not processed first, like the main global context, but last. If a packet matches no rule in any previous context, the Global Drop rule drops the traffic.

---



## pyCreate and View Log Entries

In this section, you will generate various types of traffic through the firewall as you did previously, but now you will view the log entries using the network firewall log. Open your web browser and once again try to access <http://10.1.20.11>. Also, try to ping 10.1.20.11.

Open the **Security > Event Logs > Network > Firewall** page on bigip01.f5demo.com (10.1.1.4). The log file shows the ping requests are being accepted and the web traffic is being dropped:

Time	Context	Name	Policy Type	Policy Name	Rule	Subscriber ID	Subscriber Group	Region	FQDN	Address	Port	VLAN/Tunnel	Region	FQDN	Address	Port	Route Domain	Virtual Server	Protocol
2018-06-20 02:11:39	Global	/Common/global-fw-rules	Enforced	/Common/Global	Global_Drop	unknown	unknown	Unknown	unknown	10.20.0.200	51507	/Common/OUTSIDE	Unknown	unknown	10.30.0.50	80	0		TCP
2018-06-20 02:11:38	Global	/Common/global-fw-rules	Enforced	/Common/Global	Global_Drop	unknown	unknown	Unknown	unknown	10.20.0.200	51506	/Common/OUTSIDE	Unknown	unknown	10.30.0.50	80	0		TCP
2018-06-20 02:11:38	Global	/Common/global-fw-rules	Enforced	/Common/Global	Global_Drop	unknown	unknown	Unknown	unknown	10.20.0.200	51505	/Common/OUTSIDE	Unknown	unknown	10.30.0.50	80	0		TCP
2018-06-20 02:11:33	Global	/Common/global-fw-rules	Enforced	/Common/Global	Global_Drop	unknown	unknown	Unknown	unknown	10.20.0.200	51507	/Common/OUTSIDE	Unknown	unknown	10.30.0.50	80	0		TCP
2018-06-20 02:11:32	Global	/Common/global-fw-rules	Enforced	/Common/Global	Global_Drop	unknown	unknown	Unknown	unknown	10.20.0.200	51506	/Common/OUTSIDE	Unknown	unknown	10.30.0.50	80	0		TCP
2018-06-20 02:11:32	Global	/Common/global-fw-rules	Enforced	/Common/Global	Global_Drop	unknown	unknown	Unknown	unknown	10.20.0.200	51505	/Common/OUTSIDE	Unknown	unknown	10.30.0.50	80	0		TCP
2018-06-20 02:11:30	Global	/Common/global-fw-rules	Enforced	/Common/Global	Global_Drop	unknown	unknown	Unknown	unknown	10.20.0.200	51507	/Common/OUTSIDE	Unknown	unknown	10.30.0.50	80	0		TCP
2018-06-20 02:11:29	Global	/Common/global-fw-rules	Enforced	/Common/Global	Global_Drop	unknown	unknown	Unknown	unknown	10.20.0.200	51506	/Common/OUTSIDE	Unknown	unknown	10.30.0.50	80	0		TCP
2018-06-20 02:11:29	Global	/Common/global-fw-rules	Enforced	/Common/Global	Global_Drop	unknown	unknown	Unknown	unknown	10.20.0.200	51505	/Common/OUTSIDE	Unknown	unknown	10.30.0.50	80	0		TCP
2018-06-20 02:11:17	Global	/Common/global-fw-rules	Enforced	/Common/Global	Ping	unknown	unknown	Unknown	unknown	10.20.0.200	1	/Common/OUTSIDE	Unknown	unknown	10.30.0.50	2048	0		ICMP



Although we will not configure external logging in this lab, you should be aware that the BIG-IP supports high speed external logging in various formats including **SevOne**, **Splunk** and **ArcSight**.

**Navigate** \*\* Security > Options > Network Firewall > Firewall Options \*\*

Default Firewall options configuration determine if the system is in ADC mode or Firewall Mode. In the screenshot below note the Virtual Server & Self IP Contexts Value. If it is set to Accept (system default) the Firewall is in ADC mode. For this lab we will use Firewall Mode with the value set to Reject

Local-db-publisher is linked to the global-network logging profile in the next step

**Security » Options : Network Firewall : Firewall Options**

Firewall Options External Redirection

**Default Firewall Options**

Virtual Server & Self IP Contexts	Accept ▼
Global Context	Reject ▼

**FQDN Resolver**

Global Context	None ▼
Refresh Interval	60 seconds

**Firewall Policy Management**

Firewall Compilation Mode	Automatic ▼
Firewall Deployment Mode	Automatic ▼
Log Configuration Changes	Automatic ▼
Log Publisher	local-db-publisher ▼
Inline Rule Editor	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Auto Generate UUID	Disabled ▼

**Firewall NAT**

Network Address Translation	None ▼
IPv6 Prefix Length	128 ▼

**Packet Filter**

Packet Filter Policy	None ▼
----------------------	--------

Update

Add a log publisher to the log configuration

**Navigate Security>>Event Logs>>Logging Profiles****Navigate** Select **Global Network****Navigate** Click on the **Network Firewall** Tab**Navigate** Use the publisher pulldown to select **local-db-publisher**

Review the configuration. The Storage Format section allows you to select the values included in the log.

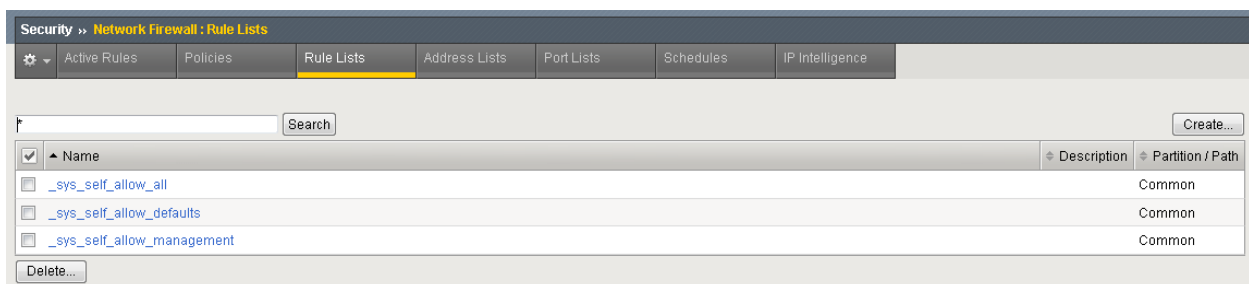
## Create a Rule List

Rule lists are a way to group a set of individual rules together and apply them to the active rule base as a group. A typical use of a rule list would be for a set of applications that have common requirements for access protocols and ports. As an example, most web applications would require TCP port 80 for HTTP and TCP port 443 for SSL/TLS. You could create a Rule list with these protocols, and apply them to each of your virtual servers.

Let's examine some of the default rule lists that are included with AFM.

Go to **Security > Network Firewall > Rule Lists**. They are:

- `_sys_self_allow_all`
- `_sys_self_allow_defaults`
- `_sys_self_allow_management`



If you click on `_sys_self_allow_management` you'll see that it is made up of two different rules that will allow management traffic (port 22/SSH and port 443 HTTPS). Instead of applying multiple rules over and over across multiple servers, you can put them in a rule list and then apply the rule list as an ACL.

Rules				Source			Destination					Reorder	Add
Name	State	Schedule		Address	Port	VLAN / Tunnel	Address	Port	Protocol	Action	Logging		
<input type="checkbox"/> <code>_sys_allow_ssh</code>	Enabled			Any	Any	Any	Any	22	6 (TCP)	Accept	Disabled		
<input type="checkbox"/> <code>_sys_allow_web</code>	Enabled			Any	Any	Any	Any	443	6 (TCP)	Accept	Disabled		

On `bigip01.f5demo.com` (10.1.1.4) create a rule list to allow Web traffic. A logical container must be created before the individual rules can be added. You will create a list with two rules, to allow port 80 (HTTP) to servers 10.1.20.11 through 10.1.20.13 and another to allow port 443 (HTTPS) to servers 10.1.20.13 through 10.1.20.15. First you need to create a container for the rules by going to:

**Security > Network Firewall > Rule Lists** and select **Create**.

For the **Name** enter `web_rule_list`, provide an optional description and then click **Finished**.

Edit the `web_rule_list` by selecting it in the Rule Lists table, then click the **Add** button in the Rules section. Here you will add two rules into the list; the first is a rule to allow HTTP.

Security > Network Firewall: Rule Lists > web\_rule\_list

Properties

**General Properties**

Name	web_rule_list
Partition / Path	Common
Description	Commonly Used Protocols

Update Delete

**Rules**

Name	State	Schedule	Source				Destination				Reorder	Add
			Address	Port	VLAN / Tunnel	Address	Port	Protocol	Action	Logging		
No records to display.												

Remove

<b>Name</b>	allow_http
<b>Protocol</b>	TCP
<b>Source</b>	Leave at Default of <b>Any</b>
<b>Destination Address</b>	<b>Specify...</b> 10.1.20.11, 10.1.20.13 then click <b>Add</b>
<b>Destination Port</b>	<b>Specify...</b> Port <b>80</b> , then click <b>Add</b>
<b>Action</b>	<b>Accept-Decisively</b>
<b>Logging</b>	Enabled

Security » Network Firewall : Rule Lists » web\_rule\_list : New Rule...

**Rule Properties**

Name	allow_http
UUID	<input type="checkbox"/> Auto Generate UUID
Description	
Order	Last ▼
State	Enabled ▼
Protocol	TCP ▼ 6
Source	Subscriber: Any ▼ Address/Region: Any ▼ Port: Any ▼ VLAN / Tunnel: Any ▼ Zone: Any ▼
Destination	Address/Region: Specify... ▼ <input type="radio"/> Address <input checked="" type="radio"/> Address List <input type="radio"/> Address Range <input type="radio"/> Blacklist Categories <input type="radio"/> Country/Region 10.1.20.11 to 10.1.20.13 Add 10.1.20.11-10.1.20.13 Edit Delete Port: Specify... ▼ <input checked="" type="radio"/> Port <input type="radio"/> Port Range <input type="radio"/> Port List 80 Add 80 Edit Delete Zone: Any ▼
iRule	None ▼
Action	Accept Decisively ▼
Send to Virtual	None ▼
Logging	Enabled ▼
Service Policy	None ▼
Protocol Inspection Profile	None ▼
Classification Policy	None ▼
<input type="button" value="Cancel"/> <input type="button" value="Repeat"/> <input type="button" value="Finished"/>	

Select **Repeat** when done.

<b>Name</b>	allow_https
<b>Protocol</b>	TCP
<b>Source</b>	Leave at Default of <b>Any</b>
<b>Destination Address</b>	<b>Specify...</b> 10.1.20.14, 10.1.20.15 then click <b>Add</b>
<b>Destination Port</b>	<b>Specify...</b> Port <b>443</b> , then click <b>Add</b>
<b>Action</b>	<b>Accept-Decisively</b>
<b>Logging</b>	Enabled

Select **Finished** when completed. When you exit, you'll notice the reject rule is after the **allow\_https** rule. This means that HTTP traffic from 10.1.20.0/24 will be accepted, while all other traffic from this subnet will be rejected based on the ordering of the rules as seen below:

## Create a Policy with a Rule List

Policies are a way to group a set of individual rules together and apply them to the active policy base as a group. A typical use of a policy list would be for a set of rule lists that have common requirements for access protocols and ports.

Create a policy list to allow the traffic you created in the rule list in the previous section. A logical container must be created before the individual rules can be added. First you need to create a container for the policy by going to:

**Security > Network Firewall > Policies** and select **Create**.

You'll notice that before Milton detached from Initech, he created a global policy named '**Global**' to allow basic connectivity to make troubleshooting easier.

For the **Name** enter **rd\_0\_policy**, provide an optional description and then click **Finished**. (Note: We commonly use "RD" in our rules to help reference the "Route Domain", default is 0)

Edit the **rd\_0\_policy** by selecting it in the Policy Lists table, then click the **Add Rule List** button. Here you will add the rule list you created in the previous section. For the **Name**, start typing **web\_rule\_list**, you will notice the name will auto complete, select the rule list **/Common/web\_rule\_list**, provide an optional description and then click **Done Editing**.

When finished your policy should look like the screen shot below.

You will notice the changes are unsaved and need to be committed to the system. This is a nice feature to have enabled to verify you want to commit the changes you've just made without a change automatically being implemented.

To commit the change, simply click "**Commit Changes to System**" located at the top of the screen.

Once committed you'll notice the rule now becomes active and the previous commit warning is removed.

Security > Network Firewall > Policies > Commonrd\_0\_policy

Active Rules | Policies | Rule Lists | Address Lists | Port Lists | Schedules | IP Intelligence

**General Properties**

Name: rd\_0\_policy  
 Partition: Common  
 Description:

Filter Active Rules List

ID	Name	State	Protocol	Source	Destination	Actions	Logging
1	web_rule_list <small>Commonly used protocols</small>	Enabled		Any			

## Add the Rule List to a Route Domain

In this section, you are going to attach the rule to a route domain using the **Security** selection in the top bar within the **Route Domain** GUI interface.

Go to **Network**, then click on **Route Domains**, then select the hyperlink for route domain **0**.

Now click on the **Security** top bar selection, which is a new option that was added in version 11.3.

In the Network Firewall section, set the Enforcement: to “**Enabled...**”.

Select the Policy you just created, “**rd\_0\_policy**” and click Update.

Network > Route Domains > 0

Properties | Security

**Policy Settings** Basic

Route Domain ID: 0  
 VLANs: APP, DMZ, OUTSIDE, http-tunnel, socks-tunnel  
 Network Firewall Enforcement: Enabled Policy: rd\_0\_policy Staging: Disabled  
 Network Address Translation: None  
 IP Intelligence: None  
 Maximum Bandwidth: 0 Mbps  
 Service Policy: None  
 Eviction Policy: None  
 Update

Review the rules that are now applied to this route domain by navigating to:

**Security > Network Firewall > Active Rules.**

From the **Context Filter** select **Route Domain 0**.

Click on the **Add Rule List to Global** from the upper right corner of the screen and click **Cancel** (note: this is a GUI bug)

Click on the **Add Rule List to Route Domain** from the upper right corner of the screen and click **Cancel** (note: this is a GUI bug)

your screen should show the web\_rule\_list you assigned earlier through the Route Domain Screen.

The screen should look similar to the below screen shot.

Security > Network Firewall > Active Rules

Active Rules | Policies | Rule Lists | Schedules | IP Intelligence

**Context Filter**

Policy Type: Enforced  
 Context: Route Domain 0

Filter Active Rules List

ID	Name	State	Protocol	Source	Destination	Action	Logging
1	Ping	Enabled	ICMP	Any	Any	Accept-Decisively	Yes
1	web_rule_list	Enabled		Any	Any	Reject	No

## Test the New Firewall Rules

Once again you will generate traffic through the BIG-IP AFM and then view the AFM (firewall) logs.

- Ping 10.1.20.11, 10.1.20.12, 10.1.20.13, 10.1.20.14, and 10.1.20.15 (why does this work?)

- In the Configuration Utility, open the **Security > Event Logs > Network > Firewall** page.
- Access for ports 80 / 443 was granted to a host using the web\_rule\_list: **allow\_http** and **\*\*allow\_https\*\*rule**.
- Note the source address of the user (10.1.10.199). The IP forwarding VIPs are configured with SNAT auto-map. Packets forwarded by the BIG-IP to the servers have a source address 10.1.20.245. This arrangement is common in cloud deployments since it simplifies traffic routing.
- Denied connections are not logged in this configuration. These are dropped by the final reject rule in the global policy

You may verify this, by going to **Security > Network Firewall > Active Rules**, then selecting the context for route domain 0. Note the **Count** field next to each rule as seen below. Also note how each rule will also provide a **Latest Matched** field so you will know the last time each rule was matched: (Investigating Counter behavior)

## Creating an Additional Rule List for Additional Services

18 Chapter 1. Class 1: AFM – The Data Center Firewall



## Security > Network Firewall > Rule Lists

Create a **Rule List** called **application\_rule\_list** then click **Finished**.

Enter the rule list by clicking on its hyperlink, then in the **Rules** section click **Add**, and add the following information, then click **Finished**.

<b>Name</b>	allow_http_8081_10.1.20.11
<b>Protocol</b>	TCP
<b>Source</b>	Leave at Default of <b>Any</b>
<b>Destination Address</b>	<b>Specify...</b> 10.1.20.11, then click <b>Add</b>
<b>Destination Port</b>	<b>Specify...</b> Port <b>8081</b> , then click <b>Add</b>
<b>Action</b>	<b>Accept-Decisively</b>
<b>Logging</b>	Enabled

Security » Network Firewall : Rule Lists » application\_rule\_list : allow\_https\_10\_1\_20\_11

Properties

### Rule Properties

Name	allow_https_10_1_20_11
UUID	<input type="checkbox"/> Auto Generate UUID
Partition / Path	Common
Description	
State	Enabled ▼
Protocol	TCP ▼ 6
Source	Subscriber: Any ▼ Address/Region: Any ▼ Port: Any ▼ VLAN / Tunnel: Any ▼ Zone: Any ▼
Destination	Address/Region: Specify... ▼ <input checked="" type="radio"/> Address <input type="radio"/> Address List <input type="radio"/> Address Range <input type="radio"/> Blacklist Categories <input type="radio"/> Country/Region <div>10.1.20.11 Add</div> <div>Edit Delete</div> Port: Specify... ▼ <input checked="" type="radio"/> Port <input type="radio"/> Port Range <input type="radio"/> Port List <div>80 Add</div> <div>Edit Delete</div> Zone: Any ▼
iRule	None ▼
Action	Accept Decisively ▼
Send to Virtual	None ▼
Logging	Enabled ▼
Service Policy	None ▼
Protocol Inspection Profile	None ▼
Classification Policy	None ▼

Update Delete

Enter the rule list by clicking on its hyperlink, then in the **Rules** section click **Add**, and add the following information, then click **Finished**.

<b>Name</b>	allow_ssh 10.1.20.11
<b>Protocol</b>	TCP
<b>Source</b>	Leave at Default of <b>Any</b>
<b>Destination Address</b>	<b>Specify...</b> 10.1.20.11, then click <b>Add</b>
<b>Destination Port</b>	<b>Specify...</b> Port <b>22</b> , then click <b>Add</b>
<b>Action</b>	<b>Accept-Decisively</b>
<b>Logging</b>	Enabled



### Add Another Rule List to the Policy

Use the **Policies** page to add the new firewall rule list to the **rd\_0\_policy**.

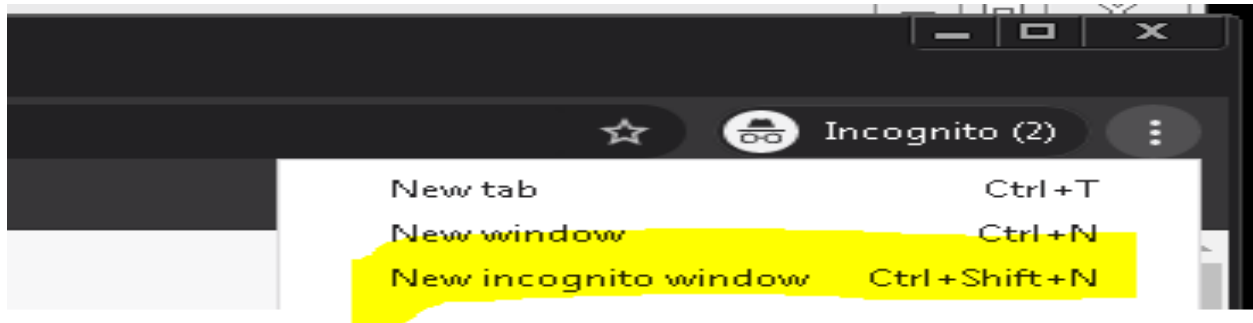
Open the **Security > Network Firewall > Policies** page.

Click on the policy name to modify the policy.

The only current active rule list is for the **web\_policy**. Click on the arrow next to **Add Rule List**, then **select, Add the rule list AT END** to add the new rule list you just created. For **Name** begin typing 'application\_rule\_list', select /Common/application\_rule\_list, then click **Done Editing**.

Remember to Commit the changes to system before proceeding.

Once completed, you should see a policy similar to the one below:



Review the rules that are now applied to this route domain by navigating to:

**Security > Network Firewall > Active Rules.**

From the **Context Filter** select **Route Domain 0**.

Click on the **Add Rule List to Global** from the upper right corner of the screen and click **Cancel** (note: this is a GUI bug)

Click on the **Add Rule List to Route Domain** from the upper right corner of the screen and click **Cancel** (note: this is a GUI bug)

your screen should show the web\_rule\_list you assigned earlier through the Route Domain Screen.

Security > Network Firewall > Active Rules

Active Rules

Policies

Rule Lists

Schedules

IP Intelligence

Context Filter

Policy Type

Enforced

Context

Route Domain

0

Filter Active Rules List

Add Rule List

Add Rule

ID	Name	State	Protocol	Source	Destination	Action	Logging	Count	Latest Match
Global with policy Global									
1	Ping	Enabled	ICMP	Any	Any	Accept-Decisively	Yes	0	Never
Route Domain 0 with policy rd_0_policy									
1	web_rule_list	Enabled		Any					
1.1	allow_http	Enabled	TCP	Any	Address 10.1.20.11-10.1.20.13 Ports 80	Accept-Decisively	Yes	0	Never
1.2	allow_https	Enabled	TCP	Any	Address 10.1.20.14-10.1.20.15 Ports 443	Accept-Decisively	Yes	0	Never
2	application_rule_list	Enabled		Any					
2.1	allow_https_10_1_20_11	Enabled	TCP	Any	Address 10.1.20.11 Ports 443	Accept-Decisively	Yes	0	Never
(Default)		Enabled	Any	Any	Any	Reject	No	0	Never

The new ordering should look something like the screen shot below:

Security » Network Firewall : Active Rules

Active Rules

Policies

Rule Lists

Schedules

IP Intelligence

Context Filter

Policy Type

Enforced

Context

Route Domain...

0

Filter Active Rules List

Add Rule List

Add Rule

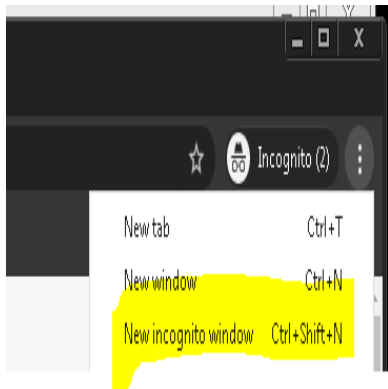
Reset Stats

	ID	+ Name	State	Protocol	Source	Destination	Action	Logging	Count	Latest Match
Global with policy Global										
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Ping	Enabled	ICMP	Any	Any	Accept-Decisively	Yes	0	Never
Route Domain 0 with policy rd_0_policy										
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	web_rule_list	Enabled		Any					
	1.1	allow_http	Enabled	TCP	Any	Addresses 10.1.20.11-10.1.20.13 Ports 80	Accept-Decisively	Yes	0	Never
	1.2	allow_https	Enabled	TCP	Any	Addresses 10.1.20.14-10.1.20.15 Ports 443	Accept-Decisively	Yes	0	Never
	1.3	Allow_8081_10_1_20_11	Enabled	TCP	Any	Addresses 10.1.20.11 Ports 8081	Accept-Decisively	Yes	0	Never
(Default)			Enabled	Any	Any	Any	Reject	No	0	Never

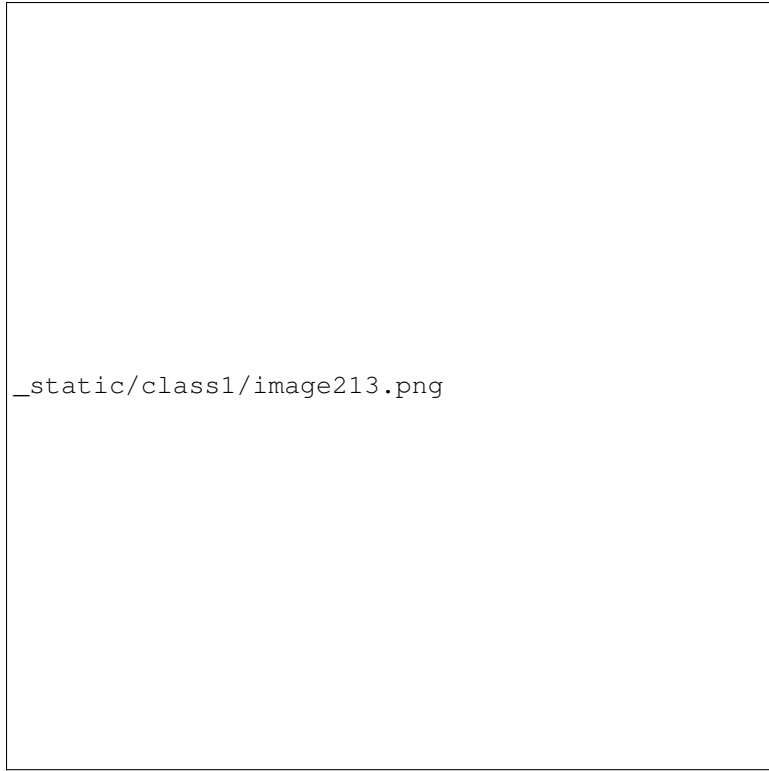
### Test Access to the Servers

- Open the incognito Web browser and access <http://10.1.20.11:8081>
- Open a new Web browser and access <http://10.1.20.11>

### Success!!



- Next open Putty Application on the Desktop, select Lamp Server-10.1.20.11.
- For the login as: type in **f5** and hit **<Enter>**



\_static/class1/image213.png

- If you received a login prompt in your Putty terminal

**Success!!**

### Test Server Access 8081 & SSH

Before we continue let's clean up the rules just a little for best practices. Use the **Rule Lists** page to consolidate the firewall rule '**web\_rule\_list**' with the '**application\_rule\_list**' since these rules would typically be in the same rule list

Open the **Security > Network Firewall > Policies** page.

Select the RD\_0\_policy

Check the box in front of '**application\_rule\_list**' and press the Delete button

Commit Changes to System

Open the **Security > Network Firewall > RuleLists** page.

Check the box in front of '**application\_rule\_list**' and press the Delete button (2x-Confirm action)

Click on the rule list '**web\_rule\_list**' to modify the rule list.

Enter the rule list by clicking on its hyperlink, then in the **Rules** section click **Add**, and add the following information, then click **Repeat**.

<b>Name</b>	allow_http_8081_10.1.20.11
<b>Protocol</b>	TCP
<b>Source</b>	Leave at Default of <b>Any</b>
<b>Destination Address</b>	<b>Specify...</b> 10.1.20.11, then click <b>Add</b>
<b>Destination Port</b>	<b>Specify...</b> Port <b>8081</b> , then click <b>Add</b>
<b>Action</b>	<b>Accept-Decisively</b>
<b>Logging</b>	Enabled

Remove the IP address and Port, enter the following information, then click **Finished**.

<b>Name</b>	allow_ssh 10.1.20.12
<b>Protocol</b>	TCP
<b>Source</b>	Leave at Default of <b>Any</b>
<b>Destination Address</b>	<b>Specify...</b> 10.1.20.12, then click <b>Add</b>
<b>Destination Port</b>	<b>Specify...</b> Port <b>22</b> , then click <b>Add</b>
<b>Action</b>	<b>Accept-Decisively</b>
<b>Logging</b>	Enabled

Inspect the properties of the rule list to verify the changes were made

Review the rules that are now applied to this route domain by navigating to:

**Security > Network Firewall > Active Rules.**

From the **Context Filter** select **Route Domain 0**.

Click on the **Add Rule List to Global** from the upper right corner of the screen and click **Cancel** (note: this is a GUI bug)

Click on the **Add Rule List to Route Domain** from the upper right corner of the screen and click **Cancel** (note: this is a GUI bug)

Your screen should show the web\_rule\_list you assigned earlier through the Route Domain Screen.

ID	Name	State	Protocol	Source	Destination	Action	Logging	Count	Latest Match
Global with policy Global									
1	Ping	Enabled	ICMP	Any	Any	Accept-Decisively	Yes	0	Never
Route Domain 0 with policy rd_0_policy									
1.1	allow_http	Enabled	TCP	Any	10.1.20.11-10.1.20.13 Ports 80	Accept-Decisively	Yes	0	Never
1.2	allow_https	Enabled	TCP	Any	10.1.20.14-10.1.20.15 Ports 443	Accept-Decisively	Yes	0	Never
1.3	allow_https_10.1.20.11	Enabled	TCP	Any	10.1.20.11 Ports 443	Accept-Decisively	Yes	0	Never
(Default)		Enabled	Any	Any	Any	Reject	No	0	Never

## Test the New Firewall Rules

Once again you will generate traffic through the BIG-IP AFM and then view the AFM (firewall) logs.

- Ping 10.1.20.11

- Open a new Web browser and access <http://10.1.20.11>
- Open a new Web browser and access <http://10.1.20.11:8081>
- Open a new Web browser and access <https://10.1.20.12> (site cant be reached)
- Next open Putty Application on the Desktop, select Lamp Server-10.1.20.12. login as: type in **f5** and **<Enter>**

In the Configuration Utility, open the **Security > Event Logs > Network > Firewall** page.

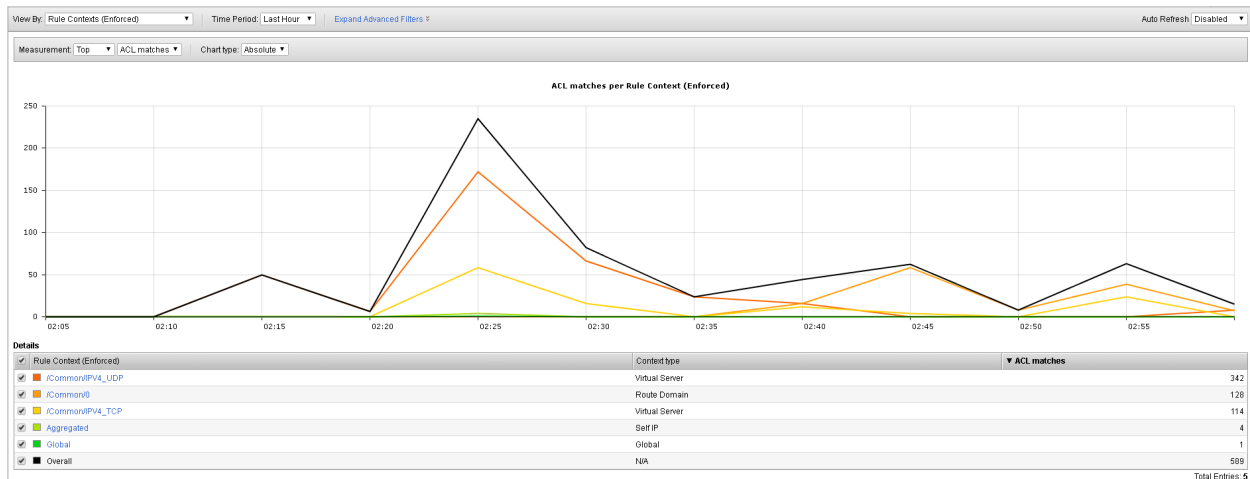
Inspect for the expected log entries

During this lab we have used Rules/Rule Lists applied to global and Route Domain objects. This is typical in a “Data Center” firewall implemntation where BIG-IP is positioned as a standalone firewall.

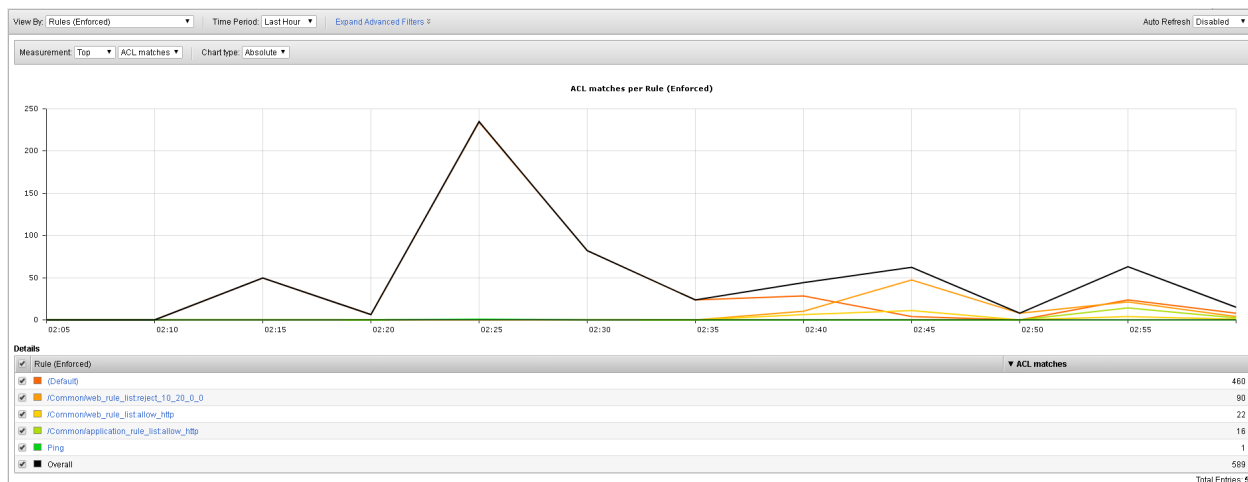
The BIG-IP Firewall module can also be used on a BIG-IP configured as an Application Delivery Controller/Load Balancer. For these environments additional granularity and East - West traffic control can be implemented by applying Ruls/Rule Lists to specific Virtual Servers or Self-IP's

## View Firewall Reports

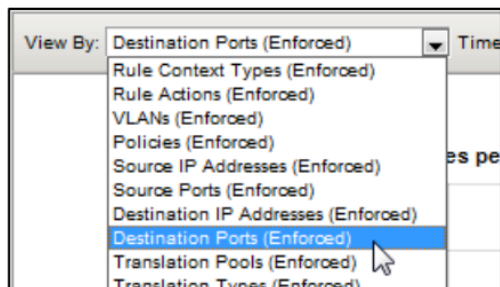
View several of the built-in network firewall reports and graphs on the BIG-IP system. Open the **Security > Reporting > Network > Enforced Rules** page. The default report shows all the rule contexts that were matched in the past hour.



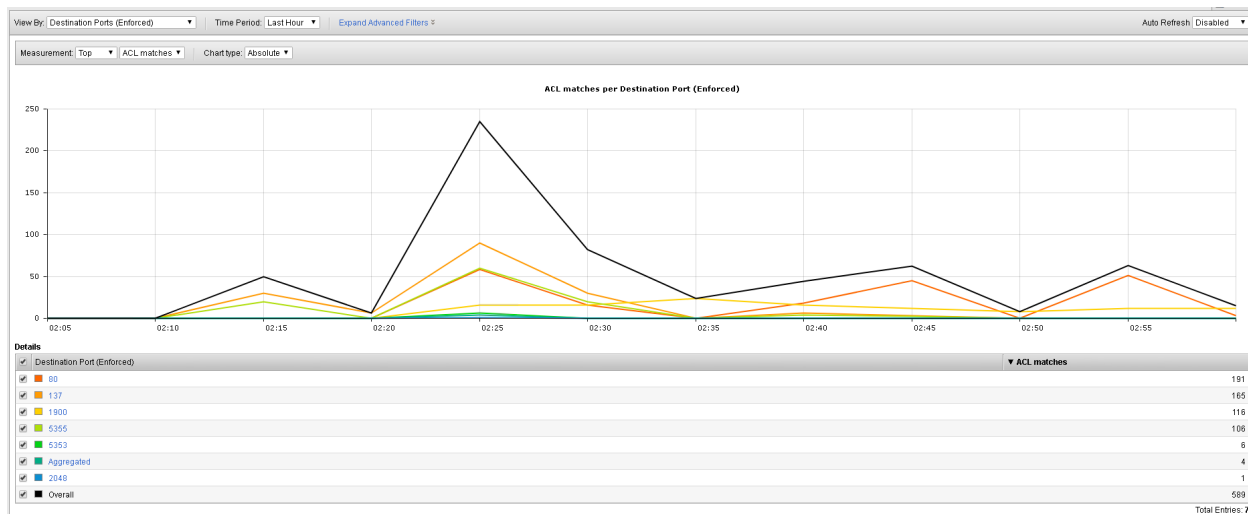
The default view gives reports per Context, in the drop-down menu select **Enforced Rules**.



From the **View By** list, select **Destination Ports (Enforced)**.

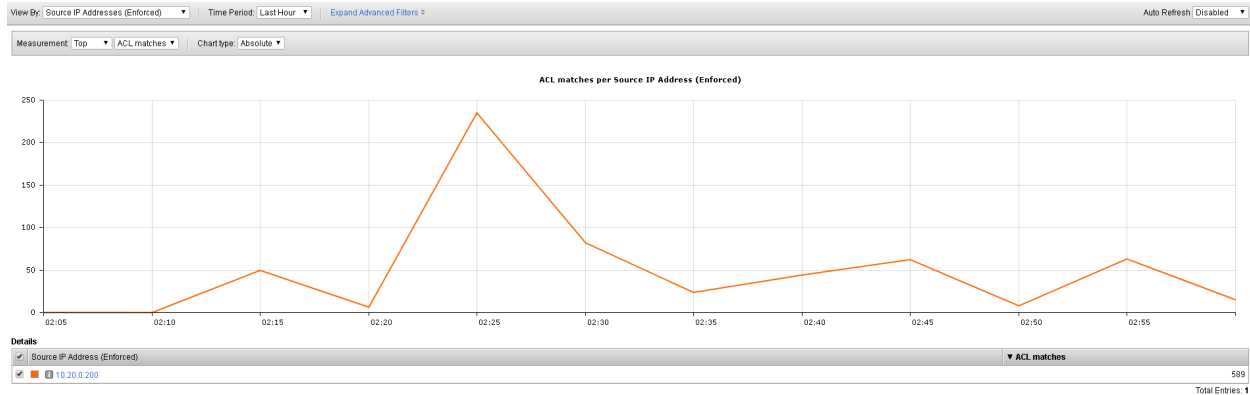


This redraws the graph to report more detail for all the destination ports that matched an ACL.



From the **View By** list, select **Source IP Addresses (Enforced)**. This shows how source IP addresses matched an ACL clause:

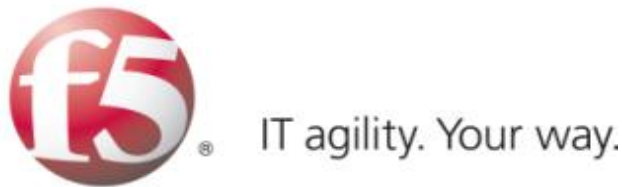




## 1.2.6 AFM Reference Material

- Network World Review of AFM: F5 data center firewall aces performance test:  
<http://www.networkworld.com/reviews/2013/072213-firewall-test-271877.html>
- AFM Product Details on **www.f5.com**:  
<http://www.f5.com/products/big-ip/big-ip-advanced-firewall-manager/overview>
- AFM Operations Guide:  
[https://support.f5.com/content/kb/en-us/products/big-ip-afm/manuals/product/f5-afm-operations-guide/\\_jcr\\_content/pdfAttach/download/file.res/f5-afm-operations-guide.pdf](https://support.f5.com/content/kb/en-us/products/big-ip-afm/manuals/product/f5-afm-operations-guide/_jcr_content/pdfAttach/download/file.res/f5-afm-operations-guide.pdf)

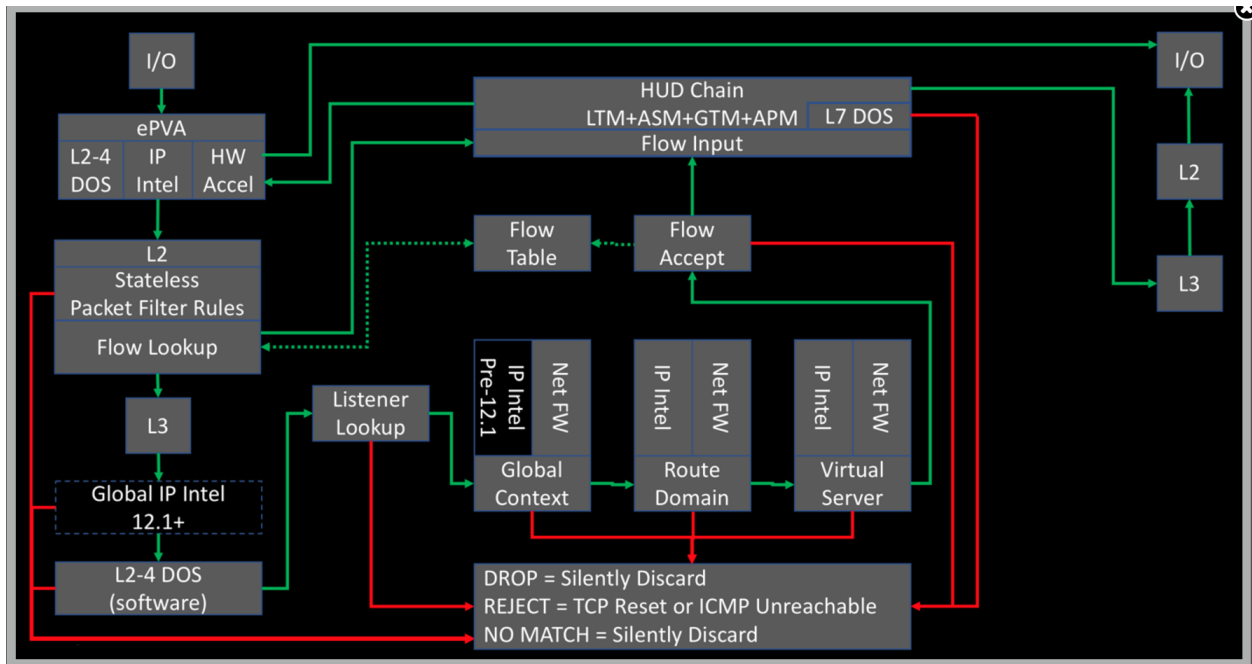
\*\*Written for TMOS 15.1.0



## 1.3 Lab 2 - AFM Packet Tester, Flow Inspector, Stale Rule Lab

### 1.3.1 Lab Overview

New in the v13 release of the BIG-IP Advanced Firewall Manager is the capability to insert a packet trace into the internal flow so you can analyze what component within the system is allowing or blocking packets based on your configuration of features and rule sets.



The packet tracing is inserted at L3 immediately prior to the Global IP intelligence. Because it is after the L2 section, this means that:

- we cannot capture in tcpdump so we can't see them in flight, and
- no physical layer details will matter as it relates to testing.

That said, it's incredibly useful for what is and is not allowing your packets through. You can insert tcp, udp, sctp, and icmp packets, with a limited set of (appropriate to each protocol) attributes for each.

### 1.3.2 Advanced Firewall Manager (AFM) Packet Tracer

#### Create and View Packet Tracer Entries

In this section, you will generate various types of traffic as you did previously, but now you will view the flow using the network packet tracer. Login to [bigip01.f5demo.com](http://bigip01.f5demo.com)

(10.1.1.4), navigate to **Security > Debug > Packet Tester**.

**Network » Network Security : Packet Tester**

**Packet Parameters**

Protocol	TCP ▼
TCP Flags	SYN <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ACK <input type="checkbox"/> RST <input type="checkbox"/> URG <input type="checkbox"/> PUSH <input type="checkbox"/> FIN <input type="checkbox"/>
Source	IP Address <input type="text"/> Port <input type="text"/> VLAN DMZ ▼
TTL	255
Destination	IP Address <input type="text"/> Port <input type="text"/>
Trace Options	Use Staged Policy No ▼ Trigger Log No ▼

**Run Trace**

Create a packet test with the following parameters:

<b>Protocol</b>	TCP
<b>TCP Flags</b>	SYN
<b>Source</b>	IP - 1.2.3.4 Port – 9999 Vlan – external
<b>TTL</b>	255
<b>Destination</b>	IP – 10.1.20.11 Port - 80
<b>Trace Options</b>	Use Staged Policy – no Trigger Log - no

Click Run Trace to view the response. Your output should resemble the allowed flow as shown below:

**Security » Debug : Packet Tester**

Flow Inspector **Packet Tester** Redirect Drop

**Packet Parameters**

Protocol	TCP ▼
TCP Flags	SYN <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ACK <input type="checkbox"/> RST <input type="checkbox"/> URG <input type="checkbox"/> PUSH <input type="checkbox"/> FIN <input type="checkbox"/>
Source	IP Address 1.2.3.4 Port 9999 VLAN OUTSIDE ▼
TTL	255
Destination	IP Address 10.30.0.50 Port 80
Trace Options	Use Staged Policy No ▼ Trigger Log No ▼

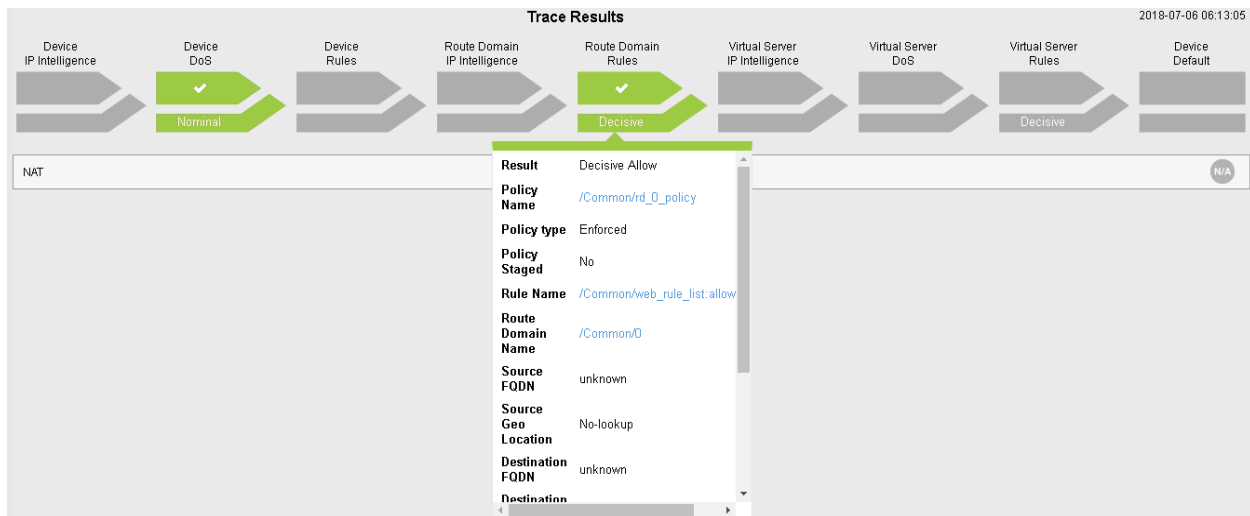
New Packet Trace ☒ Clear data

**Trace Results** 2018-07-27 14:59:26

Device IP Intelligence	Device DoS	Device Rules	Route Domain IP Intelligence	Route Domain Rules	Virtual Server IP Intelligence	Virtual Server DoS	Virtual Server Rules	Device Default
	Nominal			Decisive			Decisive	

NAT N/A

You can also click on the “Route Domain Rules” trace result and see which rule is permitting the traffic.

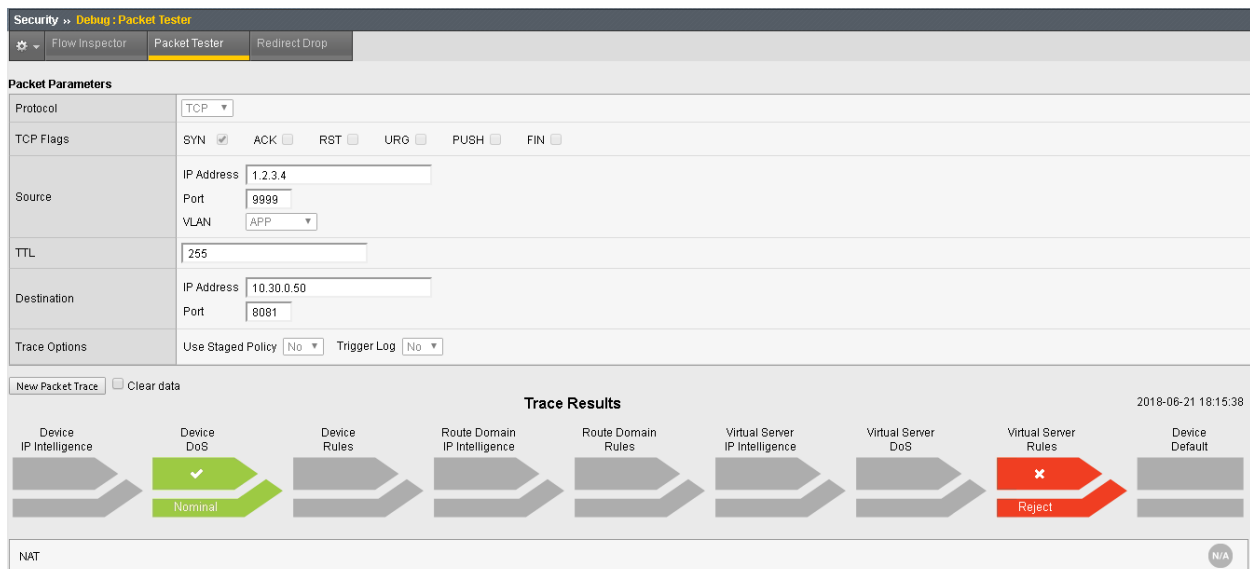


Click **New Packet Trace** (optionally do not clear the existing data – aka leave checked).

Create a packet test with the following parameters:

<b>Protocol</b>	TCP
<b>TCP Flags</b>	SYN
<b>Source</b>	IP - 1.2.3.4 Port – 9999 Vlan – Outside
<b>TTL</b>	255
<b>Destination</b>	IP – 10.1.20.11 Port - <b>8081</b>
<b>Trace Options</b>	Use Staged Policy – no Trigger Log - no

Click Run Trace to view the response. Your output should resemble the allowed flow as shown below:



<b>Protocol</b>	TCP
<b>TCP Flags</b>	SYN
<b>Source</b>	IP - 1.2.3.4 Port – 9999 Vlan – Outside
<b>TTL</b>	255
<b>Destination</b>	IP – 10.1.20.11 Port - <b>443</b>
<b>Trace Options</b>	Use Staged Policy – no Trigger Log - no

This traffic will be blocked by the default deny rule

This shows there is no rule associated with the route domain or a virtual server which would permit the traffic. As such, the traffic would be dropped/rejected.

### 1.3.3 Advanced Firewall Manager (AFM) Flow Inspector

#### Create and View Flow Inspector Data

A new tool introduced in version 13 is the flow inspector. This tool is useful to view statistical information about existing flows within the flow table. To test the flow inspector, navigate to **Security > Debug > Flow Inspector**. Refresh the web page we've been using for testing (<http://10.1.20.11>) and click “Get Flows”.

#### MK—SSH from jumphost to 10.1.20.11 (no login but session will show up in flows)

(mkurath—Opened incident C3173863 – I could not see any flow data)

Security > Debug > Flow Inspector

Flow Inspector

Packet Tester

Rejected Drop

New Parameters

Protocol

All

Source

IP Address

Any

Port

\*

Destination

IP Address

Any

Port

\*

New Flow Parameters

☒ Clear data

Client Side				Server Side				Client Side				Server Side			
Client IP/Port	Server IP/Port	Client IP/Port	Server IP/Port	Protocol	Idle Time (sec)	Virtual Path	Bits In	Bits Out	Packets In	Packets Out	Bits In	Bits Out	Packets In	Packets Out	
10.20.0.203:98578	10.40.0.50:80	10.20.0.203:98578	10.40.0.50:80	TCP	2	10.40.0.50:80	4.7K	2.5K	32	24	2.5K	4.7K	24	32	
10.20.0.203:98579	10.40.0.50:80	10.20.0.203:98579	10.40.0.50:80	TCP	2	10.40.0.50:80	7.2K	4.1K	16	8	4.1K	7.2K	8	16	
10.20.0.203:98577	10.40.0.50:80	10.20.0.203:98577	10.40.0.50:80	TCP	2	10.40.0.50:80	4.8K	2.5K	32	24	2.5K	4.8K	24	32	
10.20.0.203:98580	10.30.0.50:80	10.20.0.203:98580	10.30.0.50:80	TCP	0	10.30.0.50:80	5.6K	6.1K	40	32	6.1K	5.6K	32	40	

Select a flow and click on the pop-out arrow for additional data.

Client Side				Server Side				Client Side				Server Side			
Client IP/Port	Server IP/Port	Client IP/Port	Server IP/Port	Protocol	Idle Time (sec)	Virtual Path	Bits In	Bits Out	Packets In	Packets Out	Bits In	Bits Out	Packets In	Packets Out	
10.20.0.203:58732	10.40.0.50:80	10.20.0.203:58732	10.40.0.50:80	TCP	3	10.40.0.50:80	4.8K	2.5K	32	24	2.5K	4.8K	24	32	
Additional Info															
TMM				LastHop				Idle Timeout							
4				/Common/OUTSIDE 2c12:60:34:56:df				300							

This will show the TMM this is tied to as well as the last hop and the idle timeout. This data is extremely valuable when troubleshooting application flows.

It is also worth noting you can click directly on the IP address of a flow to pre-populate the data in the packet tester for validating access and/or where the flow is permitted.

### 1.3.4 Stale Rule Report

AFM also can list out stale rules within the device its self. You must first enable the feature. To enable, navigate to **Security > Reporting > Settings > Report Settings**. You will then need to check “**Collect Stale Rules Statistics**” found under the Network Firewall Rules Section. Please be sure to click “Save” before proceeding.

Security » Reporting : Settings : Reporting Settings

Reporting Settings   Real-Time Sessions

### Reporting Settings

Local Storage	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Remote Storage	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
DoS HTTP	<input type="checkbox"/> Collect All DoS Statistics
Protocol DNS	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Collect Source IP Address
DoS Network	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Collect Source IP Address
Network Firewall Rules	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Collect Source IP Address <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Collect Destination IP Address <input type="checkbox"/> Collect Source IP Port <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Collect Destination IP Port <input type="checkbox"/> Collect Server Side Statistics <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Collect Stale Rules Statistics
TCP/IP Errors	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Collect Source IP Address and Port <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Collect Destination IP Address and Port
SMTP Configuration for Reports Export	no configuration found ▼ Create...

Save

Once enabled, navigate to **Security > Reporting > Network > Stale Rules**. Feel free to refresh the web page we've been testing with (<http://10.1.20.11>) to see data populate into the rules.

**Note:** It could take 60+ seconds for data to populate

Security » Reporting : Network : Stale Rules

Enforced Rules   Stale Rules   Enforced Management Rules   TCP/IP Errors   Intelligence   Stale Rules

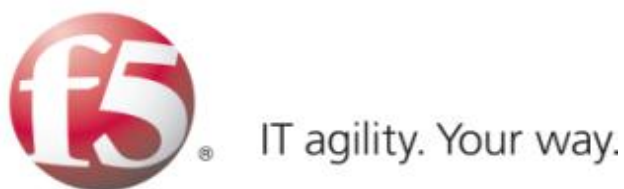
Time Range: Last Hour   Expand Advanced Filters ▼

Context Type	Context Name	Policy Name	Policy Type	Rule	Hit Count	Last Created / Updated
Route Domain	/Common0	/Common0_policy	Enforced	/Commonweb_rule_list_allow_http	0	1 hour, 3 minutes, 14 seconds ago
Route Domain	/Common0	/Common0_policy	Enforced	/Commonapplication_rule_list_allow_http	0	1 hour, 3 minutes, 14 seconds ago
Global	/Common/global-firewall-rules	/Common/Global	Enforced	Ping	0	1 hour, 3 minutes, 14 seconds ago
Global	/Common/global-firewall-rules	/Common/Global	Enforced	Dns_DNS	22	1 hour, 3 minutes, 14 seconds ago
Route Domain	/Common0	/Common0_policy	Enforced	nsd_10_20_0_0	23	1 hour, 3 minutes, 14 seconds ago

This information is quite useful for keeping a rule base tidy and optimized.

**Anyone can create a firewall rule, but who is the person that removes the unnecessary ones?**

**\*\*Written for TMOS 15.1.0**



## 1.4 Lab 3 - AFM DDoS Lab

### 1.4.1 Lab Overview

During this lab, you will configure the BIG-IP system to detect and report on various network level Denial of Service events. You will then run simulated attacks against the BIG-IP and verify the mitigation, reporting and logging of these attacks.

### 1.4.2 Detecting and Preventing DNS DoS Attacks on a Virtual Server

It is day two of your career at Initech, and you are under attack!! You walk into the office on day two only to learn your DNS servers are being attacked by Joanna who took out her flair frustrations on your DNS servers. Before you can protect the servers however, you must first tune and configure them appropriately. (The most challenging part of DoS based protection is tuning correctly).

In this section of the lab, we'll focus on creating DOS profiles that we can assign to virtual servers for protection. Let's get started!

#### Base BIG-IP Configuration

In this lab, the VE has been configured with the basic system settings and the VLAN/self-IP configurations required for the BIG-IP to communicate and pass traffic on the network. We will now need to configure the BIG-IP to listen for traffic and pass it to the back-end server.

1. Launch the Chrome shortcut titled "BIG-IP UI" on the desktop of your lab jump server. For this lab you will be working on bigip1.dnstest.lab (<http://192.168.1.100>). The credentials for the BIG-IP are conveniently displayed in the login banner. Just in case: **admin / 401elliottW!**
2. Navigate to **Local Traffic > Nodes** and create a new node with the following settings, leaving unspecified fields at their default value:
  - Name: lab-server-10.10.0.50
  - Address: 10.10.0.50

The screenshot shows the 'Local Traffic >> Nodes : Node List >> New Node...' configuration page. It is divided into two main sections: 'General Properties' and 'Configuration'. In the 'General Properties' section, the 'Name' field is set to 'lab-server-10.10.0.50', the 'Description' field is empty, and the 'Address' section has the 'Address' radio button selected with the value '10.10.0.50'. The 'Configuration' section includes 'Health Monitors' set to a dropdown menu showing 'Node Default', and three numeric input fields for 'Ratio' (1), 'Connection Limit' (0), and 'Connection Rate Limit' (0). At the bottom, there are three buttons: 'Cancel', 'Repeat', and 'Finished'.

Local Traffic >> Nodes : Node List >> New Node...	
<b>General Properties</b>	
Name	lab-server-10.10.0.50
Description	
Address	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Address <input type="radio"/> FQDN 10.10.0.50
<b>Configuration</b>	
Health Monitors	Node Default ▼
Ratio	1
Connection Limit	0
Connection Rate Limit	0
Cancel Repeat Finished	

3. Click **Finished** to add the new node.
4. Navigate to **Local Traffic > Pools** and create a new pool with the following settings, leaving unspecified attributes at their default value:
  - Name: lab-server-pool
  - Health Monitors: gateway\_icmp
  - **New Members: Node List**
    - Address: lab-server-10.10.0.50
    - Service Port: \* (All Services)
    - Click **Add** to add the new member to the member list.



Local Traffic » Pools : Pool List » New Pool...

Configuration: Basic

Name: lab-server-pool

Description:

Health Monitors:

Active: /Common gateway\_icmp

Available: /Common http, http\_head\_f5, https, https\_443

Resources:

Load Balancing Method: Round Robin

Priority Group Activation: Disabled

New Members:

☐ New Node
 ☐ New FQDN Node
 ☒ Node List

Address: lab-server-10.10.0.50 (10.10.0.50)

Service Port: \* All Services

Add

Node Name	Address/FQDN	Service Port	Auto Populate	Priority
lab-server-10.10.0.50	10.10.0.50	*		0

Edit Delete

Cancel Repeat Finished

5. Click **Finished** to create the new pool.
6. Because the attack server will be sending a huge amount of traffic, we'll need a large SNAT pool. Navigate to **Local Traffic > Address Translation > SNAT Pool List** and create a new SNAT pool with the following attributes:
  - Name: inside\_snat\_pool
  - Member List (click Add after each IP):  
10.10.0.125, 10.10.0.126, 10.10.0.127, 10.10.0.128, 10.10.0.129, 10.10.0.130
  - Click Finished

The screenshot shows the 'New SNAT Pool' configuration window. The breadcrumb trail at the top is 'Local Traffic >> Address Translation : SNAT Pool List >> New SNAT Pool...'. The window is divided into two main sections: 'General Properties' and 'Configuration'. In the 'General Properties' section, the 'Name' field is set to 'inside\_snat\_pool'. In the 'Configuration' section, the 'IP Address' field is set to '10.10.0.130'. Below this is an 'Add' button and a list of IP addresses: 10.10.0.125, 10.10.0.126, 10.10.0.127, 10.10.0.128, and 10.10.0.129. There are 'Edit' and 'Delete' buttons for the list. At the bottom of the window are 'Cancel', 'Repeat', and 'Finished' buttons.

Local Traffic >> Address Translation : SNAT Pool List >> New SNAT Pool...

**General Properties**

Name: inside\_snat\_pool

**Configuration**

IP Address: 10.10.0.130

Add

Member List

- 10.10.0.125
- 10.10.0.126
- 10.10.0.127
- 10.10.0.128
- 10.10.0.129

Edit Delete

Cancel Repeat Finished

7. Navigate to **Local Traffic > Virtual Servers** and create a new virtual server with the following settings, leaving unspecified fields at their default value:
  - Name: udp\_dns\_VS
  - Destination Address/Mask: 10.20.0.10
  - Service Port: 53 (other)
  - Protocol: UDP
  - Source Address Translation: SNAT
  - SNAT Pool: inside\_snat\_pool
  - Default Pool: lab-server-pool
8. Click Finished

Local Traffic » Virtual Servers : Virtual Server List » **udp\_dns\_VS**

⚙ Properties Resources Security Statistics

---

**General Properties**

Name	udp_dns_VS
Partition / Path	Common
Description	
Type	Standard
Source Address	0.0.0.0/0
Destination Address/Mask	10.20.0.10
Service Port	53 Other:
Notify Status to Virtual Address	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Availability	Available (Enabled) - The virtual server is available
Syncookie Status	Off
State	Enabled

---

Configuration: Basic

Protocol	UDP
Protocol Profile (Client)	udp
Protocol Profile (Server)	(Use Client Profile)
SSL Profile (Client)	<div>Selected</div> <div>Available</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>/Common</li> <li>clientssl</li> <li>clientssl-insecure-compatible</li> <li>clientssl-secure</li> <li>crypto-server-default-clientssl</li> </ul>
SSL Profile (Server)	<div>Selected</div> <div>Available</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>/Common</li> <li>apm-default-serverssl</li> <li>crypto-client-default-serverssl</li> <li>pcqip-default-serverssl</li> <li>serverssl</li> </ul>
SMTPS Profile	None
Client LDAP Profile	None
Server LDAP Profile	None
SMTP Profile	None
Netflow Profile	None
VLAN and Tunnel Traffic	All VLANs and Tunnels
Source Address Translation	SNAT
SNAT Pool	inside_snat_pool

---

**Content Rewrite**

Rewrite Profile	None
HTML Profile	None

---

**Acceleration**

Rate Class	None
------------	------

9. We'll now test the new DNS virtual server. SSH into the attack host by clicking the "Attack Host (Ubuntu)" icon on the jump host desktop.
10. Issue the `dig @10.20.0.10 www.example.com +short` command on the BASH CLI of the

attack host. You should see output similar to:

```
ubuntu@dnsclient:~$ dig @10.20.0.10 www.example.com +short  
10.10.0.99
```

This verifies that DNS traffic is passing through the BIG-IP.

11. Return to the BIG-IP and navigate to **Local Traffic > Virtual Servers** and create a new virtual server with the following settings, leaving unspecified fields at their default value:

- Name: other\_protocols\_VS
- Destination Address/Mask: 10.20.0.10
- Service Port: \* (All Ports)
- Protocol: \* All Protocols
- Any IP Profile: ipother
- Source Address Translation: SNAT
- SNAT Pool: inside\_snat\_pool
- Default Pool: lab-server-pool

12. Click Finished

Local Traffic » Virtual Servers : Virtual Server List » New Virtual Server...

General Properties	
Name	other_protocols_VS
Description	
Type	Standard
Source Address	
Destination Address/Mask	10.20.0.10
Service Port	* All Ports
Notify Status to Virtual Address	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
State	Enabled

Configuration: Basic	
Protocol	* All Protocols
HTTP Proxy Connect Profile	None
Any IP Profile	ipother
SSH Proxy Profile	None
VLAN and Tunnel Traffic	All VLANs and Tunnels
Source Address Translation	SNAT
SNAT Pool	inside_snat_pool

Resources	
iRules	<div> <div>Enabled</div> <div>Available</div> <div> <div> <div>&lt;&lt;</div> <div>&gt;&gt;</div> <div>Up</div> <div>Down</div> </div> <div> <div>/Common</div> <div> _sys_APM_ExchangeSupport_OA_BasicAuth _sys_APM_ExchangeSupport_OA_NtlmAuth _sys_APM_ExchangeSupport_helper _sys_APM_ExchangeSupport_main </div> </div> </div> </div>
Default Pool	lab-server-pool

- Return to the Attack Host SSH session and attempt to SSH to the server using SSH 10.20.0.10. Simply verify that you are prompted for credentials and press CTRL+C to cancel the session. This verifies that non-DNS traffic is now flowing through the BIG-IP.

### Establishing a DNS server baseline

Before we can prevent Joanna from attacking our DNS server, again, we should establish a baseline for how many QPS our DNS server can handle. For this lab, let's find the magic number of QPS that causes 50% CPU utilization on the BIND process.

- Connect to the Victim Server SSH session by double-clicking the **Victim Server (Ubuntu)** shortcut on the jump host desktop.
- From the BASH prompt, enter **top** and press **Enter** to start the top utility.
- You will see a list of running processes sorted by CPU utilization, like the output below:

```

top - 05:00:48 up 11:05, 1 user, load average: 0.12, 0.03, 0.01
Tasks: 85 total, 1 running, 84 sleeping, 0 stopped, 0 zombie
%Cpu(s): 0.3 us, 0.3 sy, 0.0 ni, 99.3 id, 0.0 wa, 0.0 hi, 0.0 si, 0.0 st
KiB Mem : 2061024 total, 1713508 free, 53900 used, 293616 buff/cache
KiB Swap: 2097148 total, 2097148 free, 0 used. 1790344 avail Mem

  PID USER      PR  NI    VIRT    RES    SHR S  %CPU  %MEM     TIME+ COMMAND
 1475 ubuntu    20   0   7884    3588   3160 R   0.7   0.2   0:00.11 top
 1351 root       20   0      0      0      0 S   0.3   0.0   0:00.28 kworker/u2:1
    1 root       20   0  12248   7012   5692 S   0.0   0.3   0:04.58 systemd
    2 root       20   0      0      0      0 S   0.0   0.0   0:00.01 kthreadd
    4 root       0 -20      0      0      0 S   0.0   0.0   0:00.00 kworker/0:0H
    6 root       0 -20      0      0      0 S   0.0   0.0   0:00.00 mm_percpu_wq
    7 root       20   0      0      0      0 S   0.0   0.0   0:00.24 ksoftirqd/0
    8 root       20   0      0      0      0 S   0.0   0.0   0:00.50 rcu_sched
    9 root       20   0      0      0      0 S   0.0   0.0   0:00.00 rcu_bh
   10 root       rt    0      0      0      0 S   0.0   0.0   0:00.00 migration/0
   11 root       rt    0      0      0      0 S   0.0   0.0   0:00.41 watchdog/0
   12 root       20   0      0      0      0 S   0.0   0.0   0:00.00 cpuhp/0
   13 root       20   0      0      0      0 S   0.0   0.0   0:00.00 kdevtmpfs
   14 root       0 -20      0      0      0 S   0.0   0.0   0:00.00 netns
   15 root       20   0      0      0      0 S   0.0   0.0   0:00.02 khungtaskd
   16 root       20   0      0      0      0 S   0.0   0.0   0:00.00 oom_reaper
   17 root       0 -20      0      0      0 S   0.0   0.0   0:00.00 writeback

```

4. Connect to the Attack Host SSH session by double-clicking the **Attack Host (Ubuntu)** shortcut on the jump host desktop.
5. Start by sending 500 DNS QPS for 30 seconds to the host using the following syntax:  

```
dnsperf -s 10.20.0.10 -d queryfile-example-current -c 20 -T 20 -l 30 -q 10000 -Q 500`
```
6. Observe CPU utilization over the 30 second window for the **named** process. If the CPU utilization is below 45%, increase the QPS by increasing the -Q value. If the CPU utilization is above 55%, decrease the QPS. This
7. Record the QPS required to achieve a sustained CPU utilization of approximately 50%. Consider this the QPS that the server can safely sustain for demonstration purposes.
8. Now, attack the DNS server with 10,000 QPS using the following syntax:  

```
dnsperf -s 10.20.0.10 -d queryfile-example-current -c 20 -T 20 -l 30 -q 10000 -Q 10000`
```
9. You'll notice that the CPU utilization on the victim server skyrockets, as well as DNS query timeout errors appearing on the attack server's SSH session. This shows your DNS server is overwhelmed.

### Configuring a DoS Logging Profile

We'll create a DoS logging profile so that we can see event logs in the BIG-IP UI during attack mitigation.

1. On the BIG-IP web UI, navigate to **Security > Event Logs > Logging Profiles** and create a new profile with the following values, leaving unspecified attributes at their default value:
  - Profile Name: dns-dos-profile-logging
  - DoS Protection: Enabled
  - DNS DoS Protection Publisher: local-db-publisher and click **Finish**.

Security » Event Logs : Logging Profiles » Create New Logging Profile...

**Logging Profile Properties**

Profile Name	dns-dos-profile-logging
Description	
Protocol Security	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Network Firewall	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Network Address Translation	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
DoS Protection	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Protocol Inspection	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Classification	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled

DoS Protection

**DNS DoS Protection**

Publisher	local-db-publisher
-----------	--------------------

**SIP DoS Protection**

Publisher	none
-----------	------

**Network DoS Protection**

Publisher	none
-----------	------

Cancel Finished

### Configuring a DoS Profile

We will now create a DoS profile with manually configured thresholds to limit the attack's effect on our server.

1. Navigate to **Security > DoS Protection > DoS Profiles**
2. Create a new DoS profile with the name **dns-dos-profile**.
3. Click **Finished**.

Security >> DoS Protection : DoS Profiles >> New Dos Profile

**Properties**

Name	dns-dos-profile
Description	

Cancel Finished

4. The UI will return to the DoS Profiles list. Click the **dns-dos-profile** name.
5. Click the **Protocol Security** tab and select **DNS Security** from the drop-down.
6. Click the **DNS A Query** vector from the Attack Type list.
7. Modify the **DNS A Query** vector configuration to match the following values, leaving unspecified attributes with their default value:
  - State: Mitigate
  - Threshold Mode: Fully Manual
  - Detection Threshold EPS: (Set this at 80% of your safe QPS value)
  - Mitigation Threshold EPS: (Set this to your safe QPS value)



**Properties**

**DNS A Query**

State  
 Mitigate ▼

Threshold Mode  
☐ Fully Automatic  
☐ Manual Detection / Auto Mitigation  
☒ Fully Manual

Detection Threshold EPS  
 Specify ▼ 400

Detection Threshold Percent  
 Specify ▼ 500

Mitigation Threshold EPS  
 Specify ▼ 500

☐ Simulate Auto Threshold  
☐ Bad Actor Detection

Cancel Update

8. Make sure that you click **Update** to save your changes.

### Attaching a DoS Profile

We will attach the DoS profile to the virtual server that we configured to manage DNS traffic.

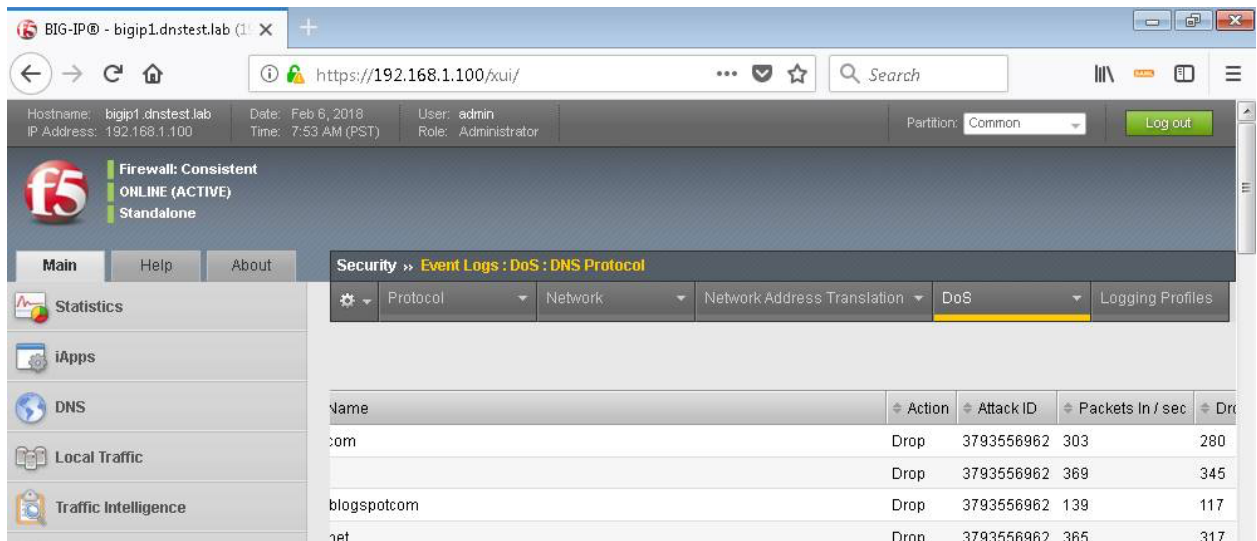
1. Navigate to **Local Traffic > Virtual Servers > Virtual Server List**.
2. Click on the **udp\_dns\_VS** name.
3. Click on the **Security** tab and select **Policies**.
4. In the **DoS Protection Profile** field, select **Enabled** and choose the **dns-dos-profile**.
5. In the **Log Profile**, select **Enabled** and move the **dns-dos-profile-logging** profile from **Available** to **Selected**.
6. Click **Update**.

### Simulate a DNS DDoS Attack

1. Open the SSH session to the victim server and ensure the top utility is running.
2. Once again, attack your DNS server from the attack host using the following syntax:  

```
dnsperf -s 10.20.0.10 -d queryfile-example-current -c 20 -T 20 -l 30 -q 10000 -Q 10000
```

- On the server SSH session running the top utility, notice the CPU utilization on your server remains in a range that ensures the DNS server is not overwhelmed.
- After the attack, navigate to **Security > Event Logs > DoS > DNS Protocol**. Observe the logs to see the mitigation actions taken by the BIG-IP. Be sure to scroll right...



### DNS DDoS Mitigations for Continued Service

At this point, you have successfully configured the BIG-IP to limit the amount of resource utilization on the BIG-IP, thus further frustrating Joanna on her flair rage. Unfortunately, even valid DNS requests can be caught in the mitigation we've configured. There are further steps that can be taken to mitigate Joanna's attack that will allow non-malicious DNS queries.

### Bad Actor Detection

Bad actor detection and blacklisting allows us to completely block communications from malicious hosts at the BIG-IP, completely preventing those hosts from reaching the back-end servers. To demonstrate:

- Navigate to **Security > DoS Protection > DoS Profiles**.
- Click on the **dns-dos-profile** profile name.
- Click on the **Protocol Security** tab then select **DNS Security**.
- Click on the **DNS A Query** attack type name.
- Modify the vector as follows:
  - Bad Actor Detection: Checked
  - Per Source IP Detection Threshold EPS: 80
  - Per Source IP Mitigation Threshold EPS: 100
  - Add Source Address to Category: Checked
  - Category Name: denial\_of\_service
  - Sustained Attack Detection Time: 15 seconds
  - Category Duration Time: 60 seconds

The screenshot shows the 'Properties' window for a 'DNS A Query' policy. The 'State' is set to 'Mitigate'. Under 'Threshold Mode', 'Fully Manual' is selected. Thresholds are set as follows: Detection Threshold EPS (Specify, 400), Detection Threshold Percent (Specify, 500), Mitigation Threshold EPS (Specify, 500), Per Source IP Detection Threshold EPS (Specify, 80), and Per Source IP Mitigation Threshold EPS (Specify, 100). Checkboxes for 'Simulate Auto Threshold' and 'Bad Actor Detection' are present, with 'Bad Actor Detection' checked. 'Add Source Address to Category' is also checked. The 'Category Name' is set to 'denial\_of\_service'. 'Sustained Attack Detection Time' is 15 seconds, and 'Category Duration Time' is 60 seconds. 'Allow External Advertisement' is unchecked. 'Cancel' and 'Update' buttons are at the bottom right.

6. Make sure you click **Update** to save your changes.
7. Navigate to **Security > Network Firewall > IP Intelligence > Policies** and create a new IP Intelligence policy with the following values, leaving unspecified attributes at their default values:
  - Name: dns-bad-actor-blocking
  - **Default Log Actions section:**
    - Log Blacklist Category Matches: Yes
  - **Blacklist Matching Policy**
    - **Create a new blacklist matching policy:**
      - \* Blacklist Category: denial\_of\_service
      - \* Click **Add** to add the policy then click finished

Security » Network Firewall : IP Intelligence : Policies » New IP Intelligence Policy...

**General Properties**

Name: bad-actor-blocking

Description:

**IP Intelligence Policy Properties**

Feed Lists: +

Selected: /Common, Global, IP Reputation

Available:

Default Action: Drop

Default Log Actions:

Log Whitelist Overrides: No

Log Blacklist Category Matches: Yes

Blacklist Matching Policy:

Blacklist Category: denial\_of\_service

Action: Use Policy Default

Log Blacklist Category Matches: Use Policy Default

Log Whitelist Overrides: Use Policy Default

Match Override: Match Source

Add, Replace, Delete

Blacklist Category	Action	Log Blacklist Category Matches	Log Whitelist Overrides	Match Override
denial_of_service	Use Policy Default	Use Policy Default	Use Policy Default	Match Source

Cancel, Repeat, Finished

8. Navigate to **Local Traffic > Virtual Servers > Virtual Server List**.
9. Click on the **udp\_dns\_VS** virtual server name.
10. Click on the **Security** tab and select **Policies**.
11. Enable **IP Intelligence** and choose the **dns-bad-actor-blocking** policy.

Local Traffic » Virtual Servers : Virtual Server List » udp\_dns\_VS

Properties Resources **Security** Statistics

Policy Settings: Basic

Destination	10.20.0.10:53
Service	DNS
Network Firewall	Enforcement: Disabled Staging: Disabled
Network Address Translation	<input type="checkbox"/> Use Device Policy <input type="checkbox"/> Use Route Domain Policy Policy: None
Maximum Bandwidth	0 Mbps
Service Policy	None
Eviction Policy	None
IP Intelligence	Enabled... Policy: dns-bad-actor-blocking
DoS Protection Profile	Enabled... Profile: dns-dos-profile
Auto Threshold	Relearn
Dynamic Signatures	Relearn Learning Phase End Time (Network): Learning Phase End Time(DNS):
Protocol Inspection Profile	Disabled
Log Profile	<div> <input type="checkbox"/> Enabled...         </div> <div> <div>Selected</div> <div>Available</div> <div>           /Common            dns-dos-profile-logging         </div> <div>           /Common            Log all requests            Log illegal requests            global-network            local-dos         </div> </div>

Update

12. Make sure you click **Update** to save your changes.
13. Navigate to **Security > Event Logs > Logging Profiles**.
14. Click the **global-network** logging profile name.
15. Under the **Network Firewall** tab (next to Protocol Security), set the IP Intelligence Publisher to **local-db-publisher** and check **Log Shun Events**.

**IP Intelligence**

Publisher	local-db-publisher
Aggregate Rate Limit	Indefinite
Log Translation Fields	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Log Shun Events	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Log RTBH Events	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Log Scrubber Events	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled

16. Click **Update** to save your changes.

17. Click the **dns-dos-profile-logging** logging profile name.
18. Check **Enabled** next to **Network Firewall**.

**Security » Event Logs : Logging Profiles » Edit Logging Profile**

**Edit Logging Profile**

**Logging Profile Properties**

Profile Name	dns-dos-profile-logging
Partition / Path	Common
Description	
Protocol Security	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Network Firewall	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Network Address Translation	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
DoS Protection	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Protocol Inspection	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Classification	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled

19. Under the **Network Firewall** tab, change the **IP Intelligence Publisher** to **local-db-publisher** and click **Update**.

**IP Intelligence**

Publisher	local-db-publisher
Aggregate Rate Limit	Indefinite
Log Translation Fields	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Log Shun Events	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Log RTBH Events	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Log Scrubber Events	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled

20. Bring into view the Victim Server SSH session running the top utility to monitor CPU utilization.
  21. On the Attack Server host, launch the DNS attack once again using the following syntax:
- ```
dnsperf -s 10.20.0.10 -d queryfile-example-current -c 20 -T 20 -l 30 -q 10000 -Q 10000
```
22. You'll notice CPU utilization on the BIG-IP begin to climb, but slowly drop. The attack host will show that queries are timing out as shown below. This is due to the BIG-IP blacklisting the bad actor.

```
[Timeout] Query timed out: msg id 3466
[Timeout] Query timed out: msg id 3467
[Timeout] Query timed out: msg id 3468
[Timeout] Query timed out: msg id 3469
[Timeout] Query timed out: msg id 3470
[Timeout] Query timed out: msg id 3471
```

23. Navigate to **Security > Event Logs > Network > IP Intelligence**. Observe the bad actor blocking mitigation logs.
24. Navigate to **Security > Event Logs > Network > Shun**. This screen shows the bad actor being added to (and later deleted from) the shun category.

Security » Event Logs : Network : Shun

Protocol Network Network Address Translation DoS Logging Profiles

Last Hour Search Custom Search...

| Time                | Shun IP    | Shun Category             | Shun TTL | Shun Action |
|---------------------|------------|---------------------------|----------|-------------|
| 2018-02-06 08:59:42 | 10.20.0.50 | /Common/denial_of_service | 0        | Delete      |
| 2018-02-06 08:58:42 | 10.20.0.50 | /Common/denial_of_service | 59       | Add         |
| 2018-02-06 08:48:31 | 10.20.0.50 | /Common/denial_of_service | 0        | Delete      |
| 2018-02-06 08:47:30 | 10.20.0.50 | /Common/denial_of_service | 60       | Add         |

25. While the attack is running, navigate to **Security > DoS Protection > DoS Overview** (you may need to refresh or set the auto refresh to 10 seconds). You will notice from here you can see all the details of the active attacks. You can also modify an attack vector right from this screen by clicking on the attack vector and modifying the fly out.

Security » DoS Protection : DoS Overview

DoS Overview DoS Profiles Device Configuration Signatures Eviction Policy List

New Filter

Filter Type: DoS Attack

Auto Refresh: Disabled Refresh

Enter Vector Name

| Profile         | Attack Vector               | State    | Family | Learning | Content    | Attack Status |           |                      | Average Aggregate EPS |       |        | Current Dropped EPS |           |                      | Detection Threshold EPS |           |           |                      |
|-----------------|-----------------------------|----------|--------|----------|------------|---------------|-----------|----------------------|-----------------------|-------|--------|---------------------|-----------|----------------------|-------------------------|-----------|-----------|----------------------|
|                 |                             |          |        |          |            | Aggregate     | Bad Actor | Attacked Destination | Current               | 1 min | 1 hour | Aggregate           | Bad Actor | Attacked Destination | Threshold Mode          | Aggregate | Bad Actor | Attacked Destination |
| dns-dos-profile | <a href="#">A Query DOS</a> | Mitigate | DoS    | Learning | udp_dns_vs | None          | None      | None                 | 200                   | 9     | 0      | 12                  | 0         | 0                    | Fully Manual            | 800       | 80        | N/A                  |

DNS A Query

State: Mitigate

Threshold Mode: Fully Automatic

Detection Threshold EPS: Specify 800

Detection Threshold Percent: Specify 500

Mitigation Threshold EPS: Specify 1000

Simulate Auto Threshold: ☐

Bad Actor Detection: ☒

Per Source IP Detection Threshold EPS: Specify 80

Per Source IP Mitigation Threshold EPS: Specify 100

Add Source Address to Category: ☒

Category Name: denial\_of\_service

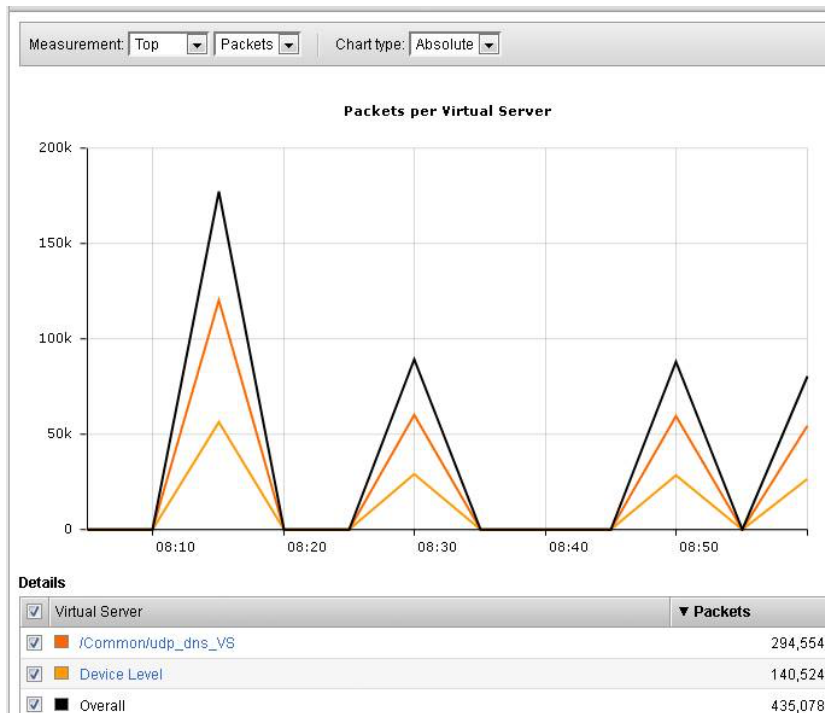
Sustained Attack Detection Time: 15 seconds

Category Duration Time: 60 seconds

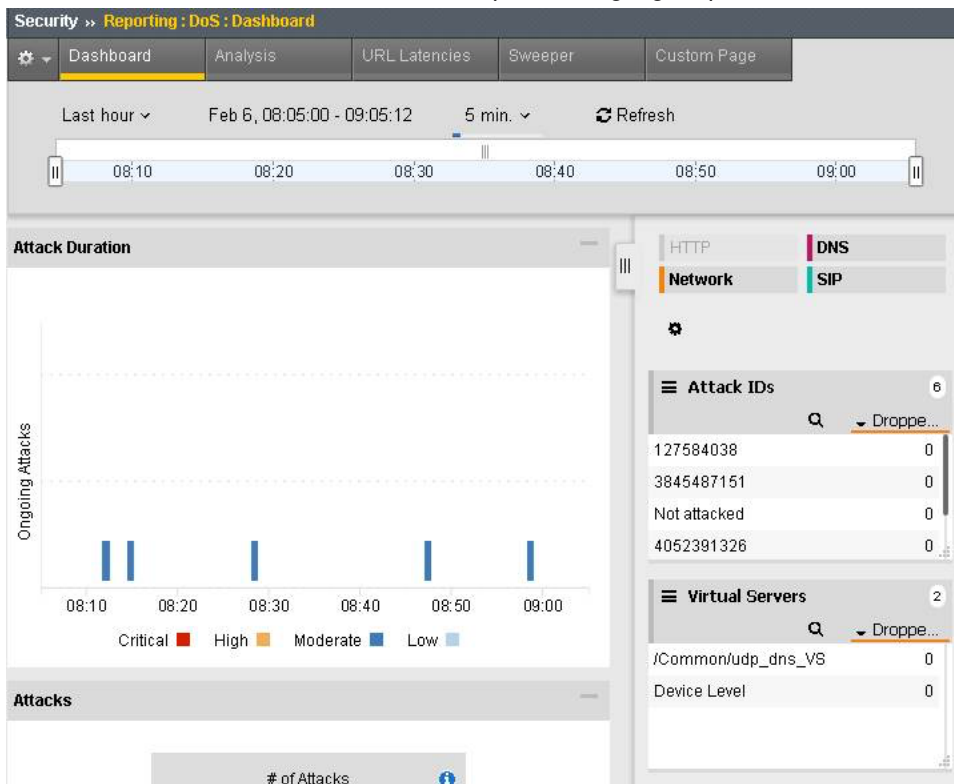
Allow External Advertisement: ☐

Cancel Update

26. Navigate to **Security > Reporting > Protocol > DNS**. Change the **View By** drop-down to view various statistics around the DNS traffic and attacks.

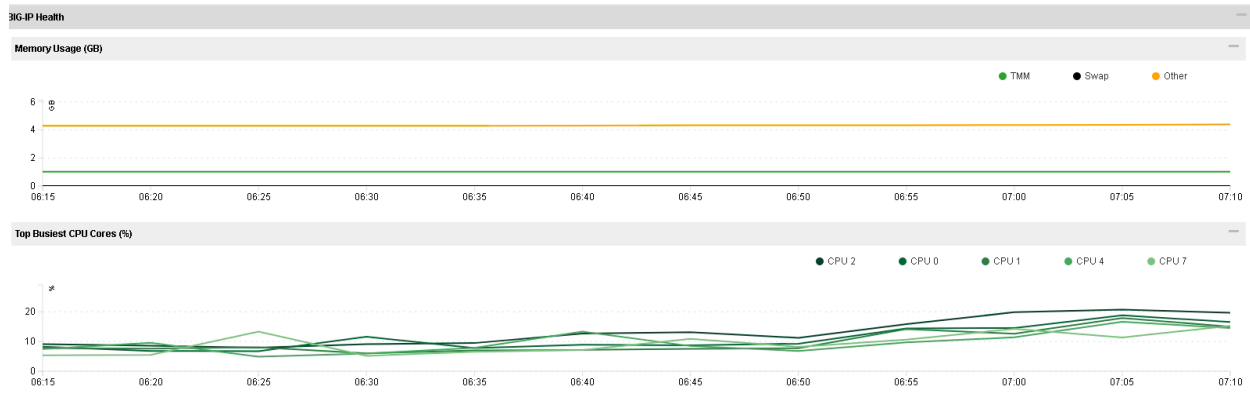


27. Navigate to **Security > Reporting > Network > IP Intelligence**. The default view may be blank. Change the **View By** drop-down to view various statistics around the IP Intelligence handling of the attack traffic.
28. Navigate to **Security > Reporting > DoS > Dashboard** to view an overview of the DoS attacks and timeline. You can select filters in the filter pane to highlight specific attacks.





29. Finally, navigate to **Security > Reporting > DoS > Analysis**. View detailed statistics around each attack.



## Remote Triggered Black Holing

The BIG-IP supports the advertisement of bad actor(s) to upstream devices via BGP to block malicious traffic closer to the source. This is accomplished by publishing a blacklist to an external resource. This is not demonstrated in this lab.

## Silverline Mitigation

F5's Silverline service offers “always on” and “on demand” DDoS scrubbing that could assist in this scenario as well. This is not demonstrated in this lab.

## Filtering specific DNS operations

The BIG-IP offers the ability to filter DNS query types and header opcodes to act as a DNS firewall. To demonstrate, we will block MX queries from our DNS server.

1. Open the SSH session to the Attack Host.
2. Perform an MX record lookup by issuing the following command:  

```
dig @10.20.0.10 MX example.com
```
3. The server doesn't have a record for this domain. This server doesn't have MX records, so those requests should be filtered
4. Navigate to **Security > Protocol Security > Security Profiles > DNS** and create a new DNS security profile with the following values, leaving unspecified attributes at their default value:
  - Name: dns-block-mx-query
  - Query Type Filter: move mx from Available to Active and click finished

The screenshot shows the 'New Security Profile...' window in the F5 management console. The breadcrumb trail at the top is 'Security >> Protocol Security : Security Profiles : DNS >> New Security Profile...'. The window has a 'Properties' section with the following fields:

- Name:** dns-block-mx-query
- Description:** (empty)
- Query Type:** Exclusion (dropdown menu)
- Query Type Filter:** A list of services. The 'Active' list contains 'mx'. The 'Available' list contains 'rp', 'bt', 'zxfr', 'x25', and 'afsd'. Arrows between the lists allow moving items back and forth.
- Header Opcode Exclusion:** A list of opcodes. The 'Active' list is empty. The 'Available' list contains 'query'. Arrows between the lists allow moving items back and forth.

At the bottom of the window are three buttons: 'Cancel', 'Repeat', and 'Finished'.

5. Navigate to **Local Traffic > Profiles > Services > DNS**. **NOTE:** if you are mousing over the services, DNS may not show up on the list. Select **Services** and then use the pulldown menu on services to select **DNS**.
6. Create a new DNS services profile with the following values, leaving unspecified values at their default values:
  - Name: dns-block-mx
  - **DNS Traffic**
    - DNS Security: Enabled
    - DNS Security Profile Name: dns-block-mx-query. Click finished

Local Traffic » Profiles : Services : DNS » New DNS Profile...

|                                                                                                                     |                          |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <b>General Properties</b>                                                                                           |                          |
| Name                                                                                                                | dns-block-mx             |
| Parent Profile                                                                                                      | dns                      |
| <b>Denial of Service Protection</b>                                                                                 |                          |
| Rapid Response Mode                                                                                                 | Disabled                 |
| Rapid Response Last Action                                                                                          | Drop                     |
| <b>Hardware Acceleration</b>                                                                                        |                          |
| Protocol Validation                                                                                                 | Disabled                 |
| Response Cache                                                                                                      | Disabled                 |
| <b>DNS Features</b>                                                                                                 |                          |
| DNSSEC                                                                                                              | Enabled                  |
| GSLB                                                                                                                | Enabled                  |
| DNS Express                                                                                                         | Enabled                  |
| DNS Cache                                                                                                           | Disabled                 |
| DNS Cache Name                                                                                                      | Select...                |
| DNS IPv6 to IPv4                                                                                                    | Disabled                 |
| Unhandled Query Actions                                                                                             | Allow                    |
| Use BIND Server on BIG-IP                                                                                           | Enabled                  |
| <b>DNS Traffic</b>                                                                                                  |                          |
| Zone Transfer                                                                                                       | Disabled                 |
| DNS Security                                                                                                        | Enabled                  |
| DNS Security Profile Name                                                                                           | dns-block-mx-query       |
| Process Recursion Desired                                                                                           | Enabled                  |
| <b>Logging and Reporting</b>                                                                                        |                          |
| Logging                                                                                                             | Disabled                 |
| Logging Profile                                                                                                     | Select...                |
| AVR Statistics Sample Rate                                                                                          | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| <input type="button" value="Cancel"/> <input type="button" value="Repeat"/> <input type="button" value="Finished"/> |                          |

7. Navigate to **Local Traffic > Virtual Servers > Virtual Server List**.
8. Click on the **udp\_dns\_VS** virtual server name.
9. In the **Configuration** section, change the view to **Advanced**.
10. Set the **DNS Profile** to **dns-block-mx**.

|                             |              |
|-----------------------------|--------------|
| SMTP Profile                | None         |
| Netflow Profile             | None         |
| WebSocket Profile           | None         |
| SplitSession Client Profile | None         |
| SplitSession Server Profile | None         |
| DNS Profile                 | dns-block-mx |
| QoE Profile                 | None         |
| GTP Profile                 | None         |
| Request Adapt Profile       | None         |
| Response Adapt Profile      | None         |
| RADIUS Profile              | None         |

11. Click **Update** to save your settings.
12. Navigate to **Security > Event Logs > Logging Profiles**.
13. Click on the **dns-dos-profile-logging** logging profile name.
14. Check **Enabled** next to **Protocol Security**.
15. In the **Protocol Security** tab, set the **DNS Security Publisher** to **local-db-publisher** and check all five of the request log types.

**Security » Event Logs : Logging Profiles » Edit Logging Profile**

**Edit Logging Profile**

**Logging Profile Properties**

|                             |                                             |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| Profile Name                | dns-dos-profile-logging                     |
| Partition / Path            | Common                                      |
| Description                 |                                             |
| Protocol Security           | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled |
| Network Firewall            | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled |
| Network Address Translation | <input type="checkbox"/> Enabled            |
| DoS Protection              | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled |
| Protocol Inspection         | <input type="checkbox"/> Enabled            |
| Classification              | <input type="checkbox"/> Enabled            |

Protocol Security Network Firewall DoS Protection

**HTTP, FTP, and SMTP Security**

|           |      |
|-----------|------|
| Publisher | none |
|-----------|------|

**DNS Security**

|                               |                                             |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| Publisher                     | local-db-publisher                          |
| Log Dropped Requests          | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled |
| Log Filtered Dropped Requests | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled |
| Log Malformed Requests        | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled |
| Log Rejected Requests         | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled |
| Log Malicious Requests        | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled |
| Storage Format                | None                                        |

16. Make sure that you click **Update** to save your settings.
17. Return to the Attack Server SSH session and re-issue the MX query command:  

```
dig @10.20.0.10 MX example.com
```
18. The query hangs as the BIG-IP is blocking the MX lookup.
19. Navigate to **Security > Event Logs > Protocol > DNS**. Observe the MX query drops.

**Security » Event Logs : Protocol : DNS**

Protocol Network Network Address Translation DoS Logging Profiles

| Source |                 | Destination |      |       |        |                |                |             |        |
|--------|-----------------|-------------|------|-------|--------|----------------|----------------|-------------|--------|
| Port   | VLAN            | Address     | Port | Route | Domain | DNS Query Type | DNS Query Name | Attack Type | Action |
| 112    | /Common/outside | 10.20.0.10  | 53   | 0     |        | MX             | example.com    | MX          | Drop   |
| 112    | /Common/outside | 10.20.0.10  | 53   | 0     |        | MX             | example.com    | MX          | Drop   |
| 112    | /Common/outside | 10.20.0.10  | 53   | 0     |        | MX             | example.com    | MX          | Drop   |

This concludes the DNS portion of the lab. On the Victim Server, stop the top utility by pressing **CTRL + C**. No mail for you Joanna!!

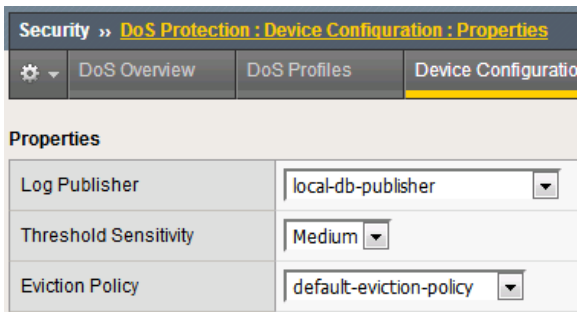
### 1.4.3 Advanced Firewall Manager (AFM) Detecting and Preventing System DoS and DDoS Attacks

In this part of the lab, you'll focus on creating system-wide policies that mitigate attacks across the entire BIG-IP instance.

#### Configure Logging

Configuring a logging destination will allow you to verify the BIG-IPs detection and mitigation of attacks, in addition to the built-in reporting.

1. In the BIG-IP web UI, navigate to **Security > DoS Protection > Device Configuration > Properties**.
2. Under **Log Publisher**, select **local-db-publisher**.
3. Click the **Commit Changes to System** button.



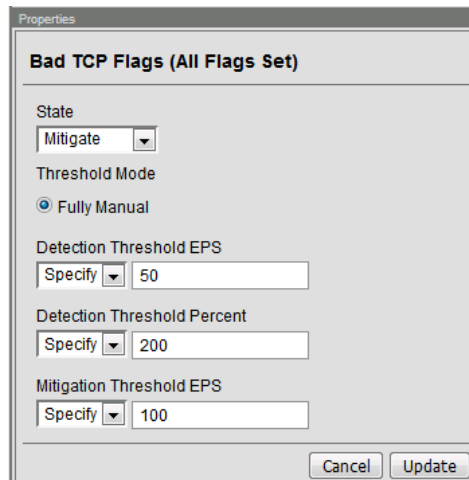
| Security >> DoS Protection : Device Configuration : Properties |                         |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| DoS Overview DoS Profiles Device Configuration                 |                         |
| Properties                                                     |                         |
| Log Publisher                                                  | local-db-publisher      |
| Threshold Sensitivity                                          | Medium                  |
| Eviction Policy                                                | default-eviction-policy |

#### Simulating a Christmas Tree Packet Attack

Joanna was feeling festive this morning. In this example, we'll set the BIG-IP to detect and mitigate Joanna's attack where all flags on a TCP packet are set. This is commonly referred to as a Christmas Tree Packet and is intended to increase processing on in-path network devices and end hosts to the target.

We'll use the hping utility to send 25,000 packets to our server, with random source IPs to simulate a DDoS attack where multiple hosts are attacking our server. We'll set the SYN, ACK, FIN, RST, URG, PUSH, Xmas and Ymas TCP flags.

1. In the BIG-IP web UI, navigate to **Security > DoS Protection > Device Configuration > Network Security**.
2. Expand the **Bad-Header-TCP** category in the vectors list.
3. Click on the **Bad TCP Flags (All Flags Set)** vector name.
4. Configure the vector with the following parameters:
  - State: Mitigate
  - Threshold Mode: Fully Manual
  - Detection Threshold EPS: Specify 50
  - Detection Threshold Percent: Specify 200
  - Mitigation Threshold EPS: Specify 100



5. Click **Update** to save your changes.
6. Open the BIG-IP SSH session and scroll the ltm log in real time with the following command: `tail -f /var/log/ltm`
7. On the attack host, launch the attack by issuing the following command on the BASH prompt:
 

```
sudo hping3 10.20.0.10 --flood --rand-source --destport 80 -c 25000 --syn --ack --fin --rst --push --urg --xmas --ymas
```
8. You'll see the BIG-IP ltm log show that the attack has been detected:

```
Feb 6 09:36:09 bigip1 err tmm[10663]: 01010252:3: A Enforced Device DOS attack start was detected for vector Bad TCP flags (all flags set), Attack ID 4112387691.
```

9. After approximately 60 seconds, press **CTRL+C** to stop the attack.

```
ubuntu@attackhost:~$ sudo hping3 10.20.0.10 --flood --rand-source --destport 80 -c 25000 --syn --ack --fin --rst --push --urg --xmas --ymas
HPING 10.20.0.10 (ens3 10.20.0.10): RS&FPUXY set, 40 headers + 0 data bytes
hping in flood mode, no replies will be shown
^C
--- 10.20.0.10 hping statistic ---
361447 packets transmitted, 0 packets received, 100% packet loss
round-trip min/avg/max = 0.0/0.0/0.0 ms
ubuntu@attackhost:~$
```

10. Navigate to **Security > DoS Protection > DoS Overview** (you may need to refresh or set the auto refresh to 10 seconds). You'll notice from here you can see all the details of the active attacks. You can also modify an attack vector right from this screen by clicking on the attack vector and modifying the details in the fly out panel.

Security >> DoS Protection : DoS Overview

DoS Overview

DoS Profiles

Device Configuration

Signatures

Eviction Policy List

View Filter

Filter Type

DoS Attack

Auto Refresh

Disabled

Refresh

Enter Vector Name

|                   |                               | Attack Status |         |          | Average Aggregate EPS |           |           | Current Dropped EPS  |         |       | Detection Threshold EPS |           |           |                      |                |           |           |                      |
|-------------------|-------------------------------|---------------|---------|----------|-----------------------|-----------|-----------|----------------------|---------|-------|-------------------------|-----------|-----------|----------------------|----------------|-----------|-----------|----------------------|
| Profile           | Attack Vector                 | State         | Family  | Learning | Context               | Aggregate | Bad Actor | Attacked Destination | Current | 1 min | 1 hour                  | Aggregate | Bad Actor | Attacked Destination | Threshold Mode | Aggregate | Bad Actor | Attacked Destination |
| dos-device-config | Bad TCP flags (all flags set) | Mitigate      | Network | Ready    | Device                | Detected  | None      | None                 | 0       | 728   | 0                       | 0         | 0         | 0                    | Fully Manual   | 50        | N/A       | N/A                  |

11. Return to the BIG-IP web UI. Navigate to **Security > Event Logs > DoS > Network > Events**. Observe the log entries showing the details surrounding the attack detection and mitigation.

| Security » Event Logs : DoS : Network : Events |            |      |                |                               |                             |            |                  |      |                  |  |
|------------------------------------------------|------------|------|----------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|------------|------------------|------|------------------|--|
|                                                | Protocol   |      | Network        |                               | Network Address Translation |            | DoS              |      | Logging Profiles |  |
|                                                |            |      |                |                               |                             |            |                  |      |                  |  |
| Destination                                    |            |      |                |                               |                             |            |                  |      |                  |  |
| Context                                        | Address    | Port | Event          | Type                          | Action                      | Attack ID  | Packets In / sec | Drop |                  |  |
| evic                                           |            |      | Attack Stopped | Bad TCP flags (all flags set) | None                        | 4112387691 | 0                | 0    |                  |  |
| evic                                           | 10.20.0.10 | 80   | Attack Sampled | Bad TCP flags (all flags set) | Drop                        | 4112387691 | 597              | 597  |                  |  |
| evic                                           | 10.20.0.10 | 80   | Attack Sampled | Bad TCP flags (all flags set) | Drop                        | 4112387691 | 593              | 593  |                  |  |
| evic                                           | 10.20.0.10 | 80   | Attack Sampled | Bad TCP flags (all flags set) | Drop                        | 4112387691 | 601              | 601  |                  |  |

12. Navigate to **Security > Reporting > DoS > Analysis**. Single-click on the attack ID in the filter list to the right of the charts and observe the various statistics around the attack.

### Simulating a TCP SYN DDoS Attack

In the last example, Joanna crafted a packet that is easily identified as malicious, as its invalid. We'll now simulate an attack with traffic that could be normal, acceptable traffic. The TCP SYN flood attack will attempt to DDoS a host by sending valid TCP traffic to a host from multiple source hosts.

1. In the BIG-IP web UI, go to **Security > DoS Protection > Device Configuration > Network Security**.
2. Expand the **Flood** category in the vectors list.
3. Click on **TCP Syn Flood** vector name.
4. Configure the vector with the following parameters:
  - State: Mitigate
  - Threshold Mode: Fully Manual
  - Detection Threshold EPS: 200
  - Detection Threshold Percent: 500
  - Mitigation Threshold EPS: 400



5. Click **Update** to save your changes.
6. Open the BIG-IP SSH session and scroll the ltm log in real time with the following command: `tail -f /var/log/ltm`
7. On the attack host, launch the attack by issuing the following command on the BASH prompt:  
`sudo hping3 10.20.0.10 --flood --rand-source --destport 80 --syn -d 120 -w 64`
8. After about 60 seconds, stop the flood attack by pressing **CTRL + C**.
9. Return to the BIG-IP web UI and navigate to **Security > Event Logs > DoS > Network > Events**. Observe the log entries showing the details surrounding the attack detection and mitigation.
10. Navigate to **Security > Reporting > DoS > Dashboard** to view an overview of the DoS attacks and timeline. You can select filters in the filter pane to highlight the specific attack.
11. Finally, navigate to **Security > Reporting > DoS > Analysis**. View detailed statistics around the attack.

## Preventing Global DoS Sweep and Flood Attacks

In the last section, the focus was on attacks originating from various hosts. In this section, we will focus on mitigating flood and sweep attacks from a single host.

### Single Endpoint Sweep

The single endpoint sweep is an attempt for an attacker to send traffic across a range of ports on the target server, typically to scan for open ports.

1. In the BIG-IP web UI, navigate to **Security > DoS Protection > Device Configuration > Network Security**.
2. Expand the **Single-Endpoint** category in the vectors list.

3. Click on **Single Endpoint Sweep** vector name.
4. Configure the vector with the following parameters:
  - State: Mitigate
  - Threshold Mode: Fully Manual
  - Detection Threshold EPS: 150
  - Mitigation Threshold EPS: 200
  - Add Source Address to Category: Checked
  - Category Name: denial\_of\_service
  - Sustained Attack Detection Time: 10 seconds
  - Category Duration Time: 60 seconds
  - Packet Type: Move All IPv4 to Selected

The screenshot shows the 'Properties' window for the 'Single Endpoint Sweep' vector. The configuration is as follows:

- State:** Mitigate (selected from a dropdown)
- Threshold Mode:** Fully Manual (selected with a radio button)
- Detection Threshold EPS:** Specify 150 (dropdown set to 'Specify', text box contains '150')
- Mitigation Threshold EPS:** Specify 200 (dropdown set to 'Specify', text box contains '200')
- Add Source Address to Category:** ☒
- Category Name:** denial\_of\_service (selected from a dropdown)
- Sustained Attack Detection Time:** 10 seconds (text box contains '10')
- Category Duration Time:** 60 seconds (text box contains '60')
- Allow External Advertisement:** ☐
- Packet Type:**
  - Selected:** All IPv4
  - Available:** All IPv6, Any ICMP (IPv4), Any ICMP (IPv6), Any Other IPv4 Protocol, Any Other IPv6 Protocol, Atomic Fragment, Bad Packet, DNS A Query, DNS AAAA Query, DNS ANY Query, DNS AXFR Query, DNS CNAME Query, DNS IXFR Query, DNS MX Query, DNS NS Query

At the bottom are 'Cancel' and 'Update' buttons.

5. Click **Update** to save your changes.
6. Navigate to **Security > Network Firewall > IP Intelligence > Policies**.
7. In the **Global Policy** section, change the **IP Intelligence Policy** to **ip-intelligence**.

Global Policy

IP Intelligence Policy: ip-intelligence

Description:

Update

8. Click **Update**.
9. Click on the **ip-intelligence** policy in the policy list below.
10. Create a new Blacklist Matching Policy in the IP Intelligence Policy Properties section with the following attributes, leaving unspecified attributes with their default values:
  - Blacklist Category: denial-of-service
  - Action: drop
  - Log Blacklist Category Matches: Yes
11. Click **Add** to add the new Blacklist Matching Policy.

**General Properties**

|                  |                 |
|------------------|-----------------|
| Name             | ip-intelligence |
| Partition / Path | Common          |
| Description      |                 |

**IP Intelligence Policy Properties**

**Feed Lists**

Selected: Common, Global, IP Reputation

Available:

**Default Action**: Drop

**Default Log Actions**

Log Whitelist Overrides: No

Log Blacklist Category Matches: No

**Blacklist Matching Policy**

Blacklist Category: denial\_of\_service

Action: Drop

Log Blacklist Category Matches: Yes

Log Whitelist Overrides: Use Policy Default

Match Override: Match Source

| Blacklist Category | Action | Log Blacklist Category Matches | Log Whitelist Overrides | Match Override |
|--------------------|--------|--------------------------------|-------------------------|----------------|
| denial_of_service  | Drop   | Yes                            | Use Policy Default      | Match Source   |

Buttons: Add, Replace, Delete

12. Click **Update** to save changes to the ip-intelligence policy.
13. Open the BIG-IP SSH session and scroll the ltm log in real time with the following command: `tail -f /var/log/ltm`
14. On the victim server, start a packet capture with an SSH filter by issuing `sudo tcpdump -nn not port 22`
15. On the attack host, launch the attack by issuing the following command on the BASH prompt:
 

```
sudo hping3 10.20.0.10 --flood --scan 1-65535 -d 128 -w 64 --syn
```

16. You will see the scan find a few open ports on the server, and the server will show the inbound sweep traffic. However, you will notice that the traffic to the server stops after a short time (10 seconds, the configured sustained attack detection time.) Leave the test running.
17. After approximately 60 seconds, sweep traffic will return to the host. This is because the IP Intelligence categorization of the attack host has expired. After 10 seconds of traffic, the bad actor is again blacklisted for another 60 seconds.
18. Stop the sweep attack on the attack host by pressing **CTRL + C**.
19. Return to the BIG-IP web UI and navigate to **Security > Event Logs > DoS > Network > Events**. Observe the log entries showing the details surrounding the attack detection and mitigation.
20. Navigate to **Security > Event Logs > Network > IP Intelligence**. Observe the log entries showing the mitigation of the sweep attack via the ip-intelligence policy.
21. Navigate to **Security > Event Logs > Network > Shun**. Observe the log entries showing the blacklist adds and deletes.
22. Navigate to **Security > Reporting > Network > IP Intelligence**. Observe the statistics showing the sweep attack and mitigation. Change the **View By** drop-down to view the varying statistics.
23. Navigate to **Security > Reporting > DoS > Dashboard** to view an overview of the DoS attacks and timeline. You can select filters in the filter pane to highlight the specific attack.
24. Finally, navigate to **Security > Reporting > DoS > Analysis**. View detailed statistics around the attack.

### Single Endpoint Flood

The single endpoint flood attack is an attempt for an attacker to send a flood of traffic to a host in hopes of overwhelming a service to a point of failure. In this example, we'll flood the target server with ICMP packets.

1. In the BIG-IP web UI, navigate to **Security > DoS Protection > Device Configuration > Network Security**.
2. Expand the **Single-Endpoint** category in the vectors list.
3. Click on **Single Endpoint Flood** vector name.
4. Configure the vector with the following parameters:
  - State: Mitigate
  - Threshold Mode: Fully Manual
  - Detection Threshold EPS: 150
  - Mitigation Threshold EPS: 200
  - Add Destination Address to Category: Checked
  - Category Name: denial\_of\_service
  - Sustained Attack Detection Time: 10 seconds
  - Category Duration Time: 60 seconds
  - Packet Type: Move Any ICMP (IPv4) to Selected

**Single Endpoint Flood**

State  
Mitigate

Threshold Mode  
☒ Fully Manual

Detection Threshold EPS  
Specify 150

Mitigation Threshold EPS  
Specify 200

☒ Add Destination Address to Category

Category Name denial\_of\_service

Sustained Attack Detection Time  
10 seconds

Category Duration Time  
60 seconds

☐ Allow External Advertisement

Packet Type

| Selected        | Available               |
|-----------------|-------------------------|
| Any ICMP (IPv4) | All IPv4                |
|                 | All IPv6                |
|                 | Any ICMP (IPv6)         |
|                 | Any Other IPv4 Protocol |
|                 | Any Other IPv6 Protocol |
|                 | Atomic Fragment         |
|                 | Bad Packet              |
|                 | DNS A Query             |
|                 | DNS AAAA Query          |
|                 | DNS ANY Query           |
|                 | DNS AXFR Query          |
|                 | DNS CNAME Query         |
|                 | DNS IXFR Query          |
|                 | DNS MX Query            |
|                 | DNS NS Query            |

Cancel Update

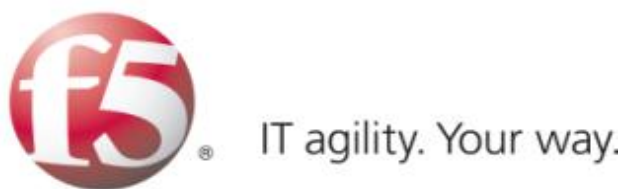
5. Click **Update** to save your changes.
6. Open the BIG-IP SSH session and scroll the ltm log in real time with the following command: `tail -f /var/log/ltm`
7. We'll run a packet capture on the victim server to gauge the incoming traffic. On the victim server, issue the following command: `sudo tcpdump -nn not port 22`
8. On the attack host, launch the attack by issuing the following command on the BASH prompt:  
`sudo hping3 10.20.0.10 --faster -c 25000 --icmp`
9. The attack host will begin flooding the victim server with ICMP packets. However, you will notice that the traffic to the server stops after a short time (10 seconds, the configured sustained attack detection time.)
10. After approximately 60 seconds, run the attack again. ICMP traffic will return to the host. This is because the IP Intelligence categorization of the attack host has expired.
11. Return to the BIG-IP web UI.
12. Navigate to **Security > Event Logs > DoS > Network > Events**. Observe the log entries showing the details surrounding the attack detection and mitigation.
13. Navigate to **Security > Event Logs > Network > IP Intelligence**. Observe the log entries showing

the mitigation of the sweep attack via the ip-intelligence policy.

14. Navigate to **Security > Reporting > Network > IP Intelligence**. Observe the statistics showing the sweep attack and mitigation.
15. Navigate to **Security > Reporting > DoS > Dashboard** to view an overview of the DoS attacks and timeline. You can select filters in the filter pane to highlight the specific attack.
16. Finally, navigate to **Security > Reporting > DoS > Analysis**. View detailed statistics around the attack.

This concludes the DoS/DDoS portion of the lab. You have successfully defeated Joanna, she has decided a career at Chotchkie's is more prosperous than nefarious internet activities, even with the new flair requirements. Well done!

**Written for TMOS 13.1.0.1/BIG-IQ 6.0**



## 1.5 Lab 4 - Device Management Workflows

### 1.5.1 Lab Overview

Day 3, you get a little curious and wonder why both BIG-IP's you've been working on say they're managed by BIG-IQ (look near the red f5 ball on the top left of both BIG-IP's). Unbelievable, all this time you've been configuring both devices independently when you could have been configuring them on a central management device.

Central Management Version - 6.0 was a major evolution of the BIG-IQ product line designed to become the primary source of centralized management for all physical and virtual F5 BIG-IP devices. BIG-IQ extends its offerings for security users, improving the user experience, and adding robustness and scale throughout the platform.

### 1.5.2 Base BIG-IQ Configuration

In this lab, the VE has been configured with the basic system settings and the VLAN/self-IP configurations required for the BIG-IQ to communicate and pass traffic on the network. Additionally, the Data Collection Device has already been added to BIG-IQ and the BIG-IP's have been imported and have been gathering health statistics. They have not however had their configurations imported.

### 1.5.3 New features

#### Statistics Dashboards

This is the real first step managing data statistics using a DCD (data collection device) evolving toward a true analytics platform. In this guide, we will explore setting up and establishing connectivity using master key to each DCD (data collection device).

- Enabling statistics for each functional area as part of the discovery process. This will allow BIG-IQ to proxy statistics gathered and organized from each BIG-IP device leveraging F5 Analytics iApp service (<https://devcentral.f5.com/codeshare/f5-analytics-iapp>).
- Configuration and tuning of statistic collections post discovery allowing the user to focus on data specific to their needs.
- Viewing and interaction with statistics dashboard, such as filtering views, differing time spans, selection and drilldown into dashboards for granular data trends and setting a refresh interval for collections.

### **Auto-scaling in a VMware cloud environment**

You can now securely manage traffic to applications in a VMware cloud environment, specifying the parameters in a service scaling group to dynamically deploy and delete BIG-IP devices as needed. BIG-IQ manages the BIG-IP devices that are load balancing to the BIG-IP VE devices in the cloud, as well as to the BIG-IP devices' application servers.

### **Auto-scaling in an AWS environment**

You can now securely manage traffic to applications in a VMware cloud environment, specifying the parameters in a service scaling group to dynamically deploy and delete BIG-IP devices as needed. You can manage the BIG-IP VE devices from a BIG-IQ system on-premises, or in the cloud. You have the option to use an F5 AWS Marketplace license, or your own BIG-IP license.

### **BIG-IQ VE deployment in MS Azure**

You can now deploy a BIG-IQ VE in a MS Azure cloud environment.

### **Intuitive visibility for all managed applications**

BIG-IQ now provides an overview of all managed applications with the option for a more detailed view of each application. Both the overview and detailed views provide information about the application's performance, Web Application Security status, and network statistics.

### **Easy application troubleshooting based on application traffic and security data**

You can now enable enhanced analytics to view detailed application data in real-time, which allows you to isolate traffic characteristics that are affecting your application's performance and security status.

### **Real-time notifications for monitored devices and applications**

You can now receive real time alerts and events for BIG-IP devices and their connected applications. These notifications are integrated into the BIG-IQ UI charts and allow you to pinpoint activities that are currently affecting your application.

### **Enhanced HTTP and Web Application Security visibility for all applications**

You can use the HTTP and Web Application Security Dashboards to monitor all applications managed by BIG-IQ Centralized Management. These dashboards allow you to compare applications, pool members, and other aspects of traffic to your applications. In addition, the enhanced view includes real time events and alerts within the charts, and enhanced analytics data.

### **Added object and management support for DNS features**

Creating, reading, updating, and deleting DNS GSLB objects, and listeners is now supported from the BIG-IQ user interface and the API.

### **Visibility into managed service scaling groups**

An automatically scalable environment of BIG-IP VE devices can be defined to provide services to a set of applications. System administrators of BIG-IQ Centralized Management can monitor performance data for these BIG-IP VE devices.

### **Enhanced DNS visibility & configuration**

BIG-IQ provides the ability to configure and have an enhanced view into DNS traffic, which now includes both peak traffic values and average traffic values over a selected period of time.

### **Application templates**

Enhanced application/service templates that make deployments simple and repeatable.

### **Security policies and profiles available in applications**

You can now add security policies and profiles to applications, including Web Application Security policies, Network Security firewall policies, DoS profiles, and logging profiles.

### **Automatically deploy policy learning**

You can now enable automatic deployment of policy learning using Web Application Security.

### **Extended ASM/advanced WAF management that includes**

- Auto-deploy policy learning
- Brute-force attack event monitoring
- Event correlation
- Manage DataSafe profiles
- Initial ASM and HTTP monitoring dashboards

### **Enhanced AFM Management**

- AFM and DoS event visualization
- Multi device packet tester
- Enhanced debugging

### **APM enhancements**

- Management capabilities for APM Federation through BIG-IQ (SAML, IdP and SP)
- Management capabilities for APM SSO configuration for Web Proxy Authentication Support Through BIG-IQ

### **Manage cookie protection**

You can now manage cookie protection for BIG-IP devices using Web Application Security.

### **Monitoring dashboard for Web Application Security statistics**

You can review Web Application Security policy statistics using a graphical dashboard.

### **Manage DataSafe profiles**

You can now manage DataSafe profiles using Fraud Protection Security.

### **Enhanced support for NAT firewalls**

You can now use the enhanced NAT firewall support in Network Security.

### **Subscriber support in firewall rules**

You can now add subscriber IDs and groups to firewall rules in Network Security for BIG-IP devices that support them.

### **Firewall testing using packet flow reports**

You can now create and view packet flow reports to test firewall configurations in Network Security.

### **Support for multiple BIG-IP devices with packet tester reports**



You can now select multiple BIG-IP devices when generating packet tester reports in Network Security.

### Renaming of firewall objects supported

You can now rename firewall objects, such as firewall policies in Network Security.

### Enhanced support for DoS profiles, device DoS configurations, and scrubber profiles

You can now manage additional features of DoS profiles, device DoS configurations, and scrubber profiles that are found in BIG-IP version 13.1, such as new vectors, stress-based mitigation, DNS dynamic signatures, and VLAN support in scrubber profiles.

### Copying device DoS configurations

You can now copy device DoS configurations from one BIG-IP device to multiple BIG-IP devices with the same version.

### Viewing logs for DoS and firewall events in the user interface

You can now configure and view logging of DoS and firewall events, and for DoS events, see that information in a graphical format.

Additional details can be found in the full release notes:

<https://support.f5.com/kb/en-us/products/big-ip-centralized-mgmt/releasesnotes/product/relnote-big-ip-central-mgmt-6-0-0.html>

**BIG-IP Versions** AskF5 SOL with this info:

<https://support.f5.com/kb/en-us/solutions/public/14000/500/sol14592.html>

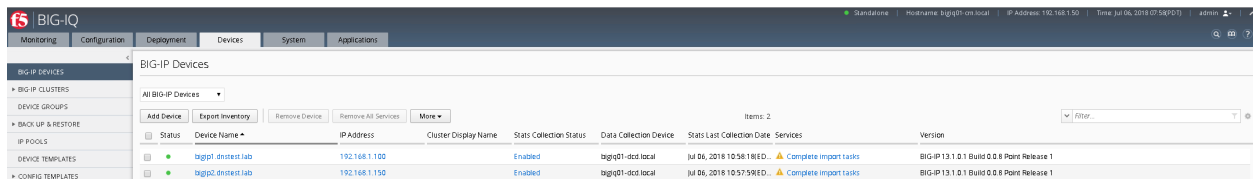
## 1.5.4 Changes to BIG-IQ User Interface

The user interface in the 6.0 release navigation has changed to a more UI tab-based framework.

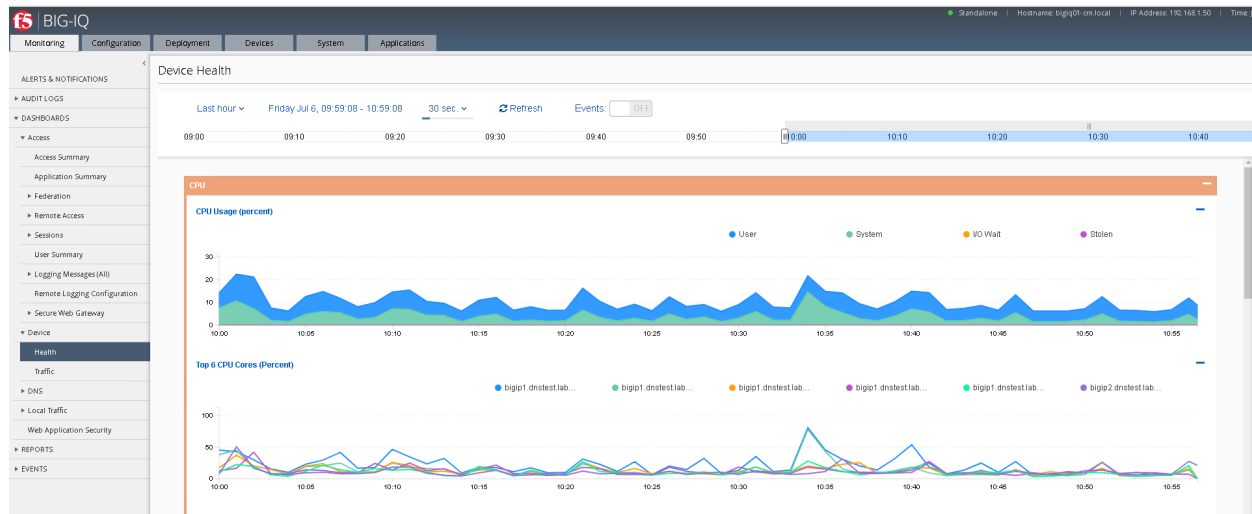
In this section, we will go through the main features of the user interface. Feel free to log into the BIG-IQ (<https://192.168.1.50>) username: admin password: 401elliottW! device to explore some of these features in the lab.

After you log into BIG-IQ, you will notice:

- A navigation tab model at the top of the screen to display each high level functional area.
- A tree based menu on the left-hand side of the screen to display low-level functional area for each tab.
- A large object browsing and editing area on the right-hand side of the screen.



- Let us look a little deeper at the different options available in the bar at the top of the page.

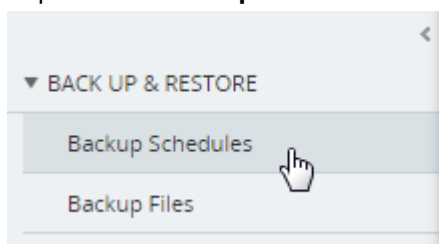


- At the top, each tab describes a high-level functional area for BIG-IQ central management:
- Monitoring –Visibility in dashboard format to monitor performance and isolate fault area.
- Configuration – Provides configuration editors for each module area.
- Deployment – Provides operational functions around deployment for each module area.
- Devices – Lifecycle management around discovery, licensing and software install / upgrade.
- System – Management and monitoring of BIG-IQ functionality.
- Applications – Build, deploy, monitor service catalog-based applications centrally.

### 1.5.5 Workflow 1: Creating a Backup Schedule

BIG-IQ is capable of centrally backing up and restoring all the BIG-IP devices it manages. To create a simple backup schedule, follow the following steps.

1. Click on the **Back Up & Restore** submenu in the Devices header.
2. Expand the **Back Up and Restore** menu item found on the left and click on **Backup Schedules**



3. Click the **Create** button

Backup Schedules

Back Up Now Create

| Status | Name |
|--------|------|
|--------|------|

4. Fill out the Backup Schedule using the following settings:

- **Name:** Nightly
- **Local Retention Policy:** Delete local backup copy 1 day after creation
- **Backup Frequency:** Daily
- **Start Time:** 00:00 Eastern Daylight Time
- **Devices: Groups (radio button):** All BIG-IP Group Devices

Your screen should look similar to the one below.

← ... / New Backup Schedule \*

Backup Properties

Name: nightly

Description:

Private Keys: ☒ Include Private Keys

Encryption: ☐ Encrypt Backup Files

Local Retention Policy: ☒ Delete local backup copy 1 day after creation

Backup Schedule

Backup Frequency: Daily

Start Date: Jul 06, 2018 Start time: 0:00 Eastern Daylight Time

End Date: ☒ No end date

Devices

Selected Group: All BIG-IP Group Devices

Selected

| Name              | Address       | Group Name               |
|-------------------|---------------|--------------------------|
| bigip2.dvtest.lab | 192.168.1.150 | All BIG-IP Group Devices |
| bigip1.dvtest.lab | 192.168.1.100 | All BIG-IP Group Devices |

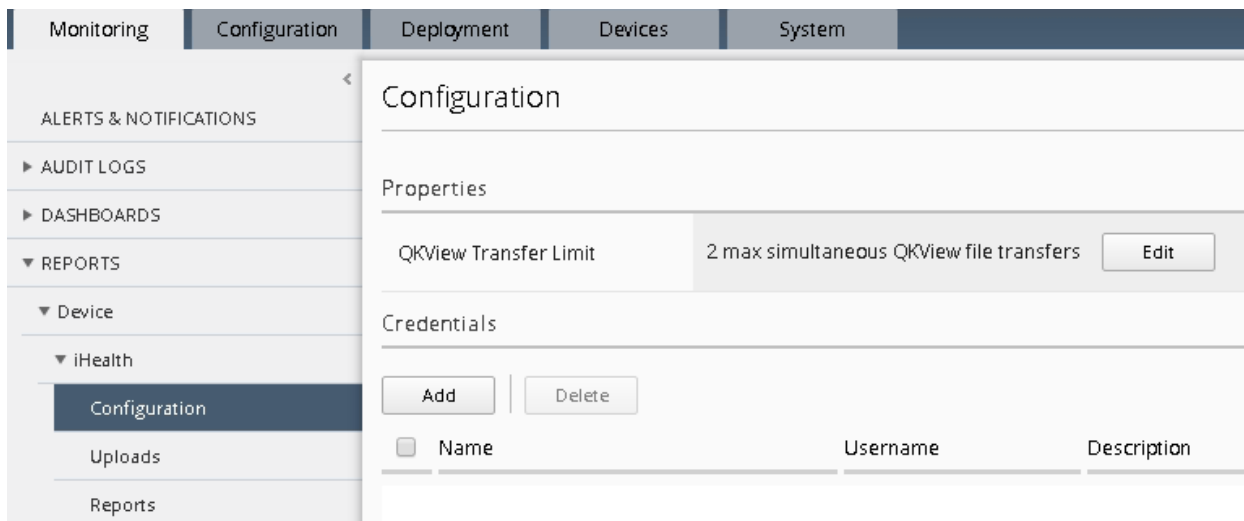
5. Click **Save & Close** to save the scheduled backup job.
6. Optionally feel free to select the newly created schedule and select “Run Schedule Now” to immediately backup the devices.
  - Add a Name for the Back Up
  - Click **Start**
  - When completed the backups will be listed under the Backup Files section

## 1.5.6 Workflow 2: Uploading QKviews to iHealth for a support case

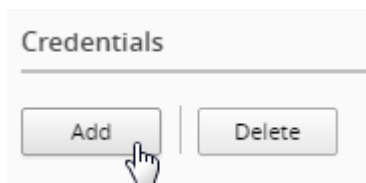
BIG-IQ can now push qkviews from managed devices to [ihealth.f5.com](https://ihealth.f5.com) and provide a link to the report of heuristic hits based on the qkview. These qkview uploads can be performed ad-hoc or as part of a

F5 support case. If a support case is specified in the upload job, the qkview(s) will automatically be associated/linked to the support case. In addition to the link to the report, the qkview data is accessible at [ihealth.f5.com](https://ihealth.f5.com) to take advantage of other iHealth features like the upgrade advisor.

### 1. Navigate to **Monitoring Reports Device iHealth Configuration**



### 2. Add Credentials to be used for the qkview upload and report retrieval. Click the Add button under Credentials.



**Warning:** If you do not have credentials, please raise your hand and speak to an instructor

### 3. Fill in the credentials that you used to access <https://ihealth.f5.com>:

- Name: Give the credentials a name to be referenced in BIG-IQ
- Username: <Username you use to access iHealth.f5.com>
- Password: <Password you use to access iHealth.f5.com>

| Credential Properties |                    |
|-----------------------|--------------------|
| Name                  | Fred Wittenberg    |
| Username              | fwittenberg@f5.com |
| Password              | *****              |
| Description           |                    |
| Connection Test       | Test               |

4. Click the Test button to validate that your credentials work.
5. Click the Save & Close button in the lower right.
6. Click the QKview Upload Schedules button in the BIG-IP iHealth menu.

#### **Monitoring > Reports > Device > iHealth > QKView Upload Schedule**

7. Click Create with the following values
  - Name – Weekly Upload
  - Description – Nightly QKView Upload
  - Credential – (use what was created in step 3)
  - Upload Frequency – Weekly (Select Sunday)
  - Start Time – Select today's date at 00:00
  - End Date – No End date should be checked
  - Select both devices
  - Click the right arrow to move to the “Selected” Area
  - Click Save & Close.

← ... / Weekly Upload

**Properties**

|             |                                            |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------|
| Name        | Weekly Upload                              |
| Description |                                            |
| Credential  | Fred Wittenberg                            |
| Status      | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Scheduled |

**Upload Schedule**

|                  |              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|------------------|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Upload Frequency | Weekly       | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Sunday <input type="radio"/> Monday <input type="radio"/> Tuesday <input type="radio"/> Wednesday <input type="radio"/> Thursday <input type="radio"/> Friday <input type="radio"/> Saturday |
| Start Date       | Jul 06, 2018 | Start time: 00 : 00                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| End Date         | Jul 06, 2018 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No End Date                                                                                                                                                                               |

**Devices**

| Device             | Last Report |
|--------------------|-------------|
| bigip1.dnstest.lab |             |
| bigip2.dnstest.lab |             |

Items: 2

You will now have a fresh set of QKView in iHealth every Sunday morning. This is extremely useful for when new cases are opened, one less step you'll need for support to engage quicker.

### **1.5.7 Workflow 3: Device Import**

BIG-IQ is capable of centrally managing multiple products, for this lab we will only manage LTM and AFM. To import the device configurations, follow the steps below

1. Navigate to the Devices tab and click on **BIG-IP Devices** (left panel)

Monitoring

Configuration

Deployment

Devices

System

Applications

BIG-IP DEVICES

BIG-IP CLUSTERS

DEVICE GROUPS

BACK UP & RESTORE

Backup Schedules

Backup Files

Backup Compare History

BIG-IP DEVICES

All BIO-IP Devices

Add Device

Export Inventory

Remove Device

Remove All Services

More

Items: 2

| <input type="checkbox"/> | Status      | Device Name        | IP Address    | Cluster Display Name | Stats Collection Status | Data Collection Device | Stats Last Collection Date | Services                         |
|--------------------------|-------------|--------------------|---------------|----------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | <div></div> | bigip1.dnctest.lab | 192.168.1.100 |                      | Enabled                 | bigip01-dcd.local      | Jul 06, 2018 15:05:15(EDT) | <div>Complete import tasks</div> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | <div></div> | bigip2.dnctest.lab | 192.168.1.150 |                      | Enabled                 | bigip01-dcd.local      | Jul 06, 2018 15:05:12(EDT) | <div>Complete import tasks</div> |

2. You'll notice both devices have not completed the import tasks, to remedy this simply click on the "Complete Import Tasks" Link
3. First Re-discover the LTM service
4. Then Discover the AFM service
5. Once Re-discovery has completed, import both the LTM and AFM services
6. Repeat this same procedure for both devices, once completed your screen will show the following.

**Note:** For any conflicts you may encounter – leave BIG-IQ selected resolution

BIG-IP Devices

All BIG-IP Devices

Add DeviceExport InventoryRemove DeviceRemove All ServicesMore

Items: 2

| <input type="checkbox"/> | Status        | Device Name        | IP Address    | Cluster Display Name | Stats Collection Status | Data Collection Device | Stats Last Collection Date  | Services             |
|--------------------------|---------------|--------------------|---------------|----------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | <span></span> | bigip1.dnctest.lab | 192.168.1.100 |                      | Enabled                 | bigip01-dcd.local      | Jul 06, 2018 15:13:57(ED... | Management, LTM, AFM |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | <span></span> | bigip2.dnctest.lab | 192.168.1.150 |                      | Enabled                 | bigip01-dcd.local      | Jul 06, 2018 15:14:02(ED... | Management, LTM, AFM |

## 1.5.8 BIG-IQ Statistics Dashboards

### Workflow 1: Reviewing the data in the dashboards

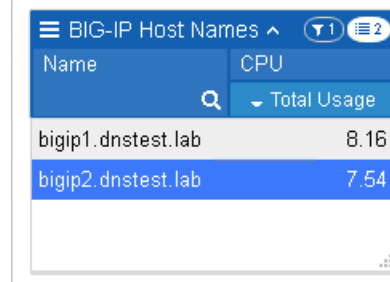
#### Navigate to **Monitoring Dashboards Device Health**



## 1.5.9 Workflow 2: Interacting with the data in the dashboards

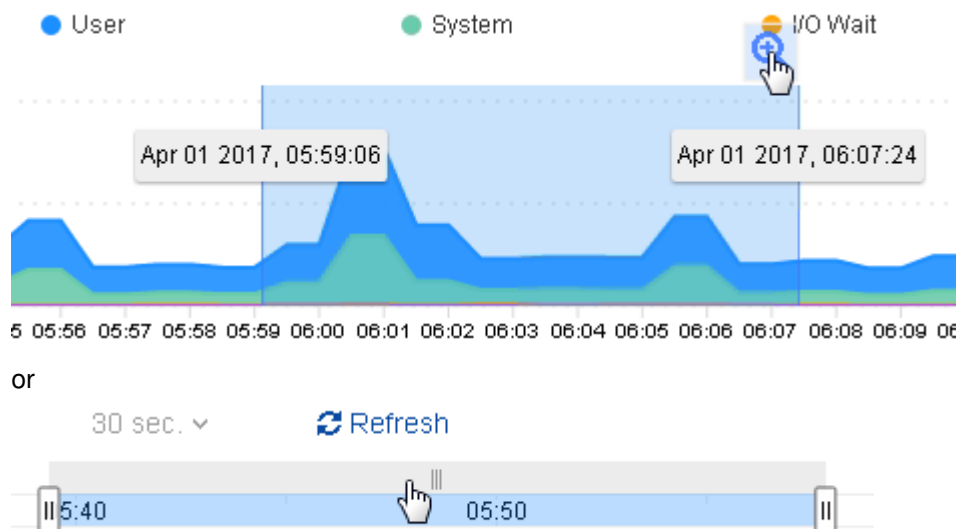
- You can narrow the scope of what is graphed by selecting a object or objects from the selection panels on the right. For example, if you only want to see data from BIG-IP01, you can click on it to

filter the data.

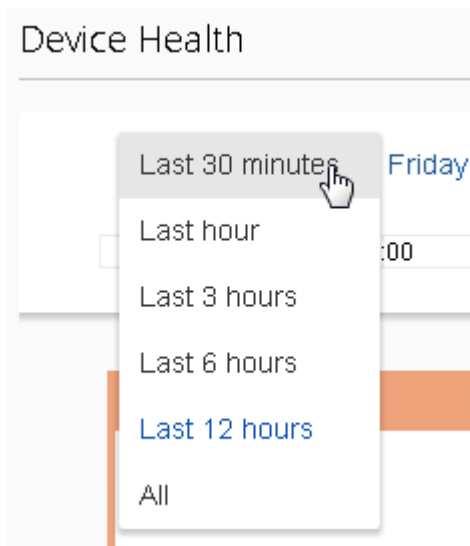


| BIG-IP Host Names  |      |
|--------------------|------|
| Name               | CPU  |
| bigip1.dnctest.lab | 8.16 |
| bigip2.dnctest.lab | 7.54 |

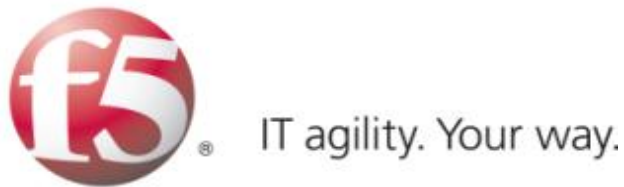
- You can create complex filters by making additional selections in other panels
- You can zoom in on a time, by selecting a section of a graph or moving the slider at the top of the page



- All the graphs update to the selected time.
- You can change how far in the data you want to look back by using the selection in the upper left (note you may need to let some time elapse before this option becomes available)



Written for TMOS 13.1.0.1/BIG-IQ 6.0



## 1.6 Lab 5 - Network Security (AFM) Management Workflows

### 1.6.1 Network Security (AFM) Management Workflows

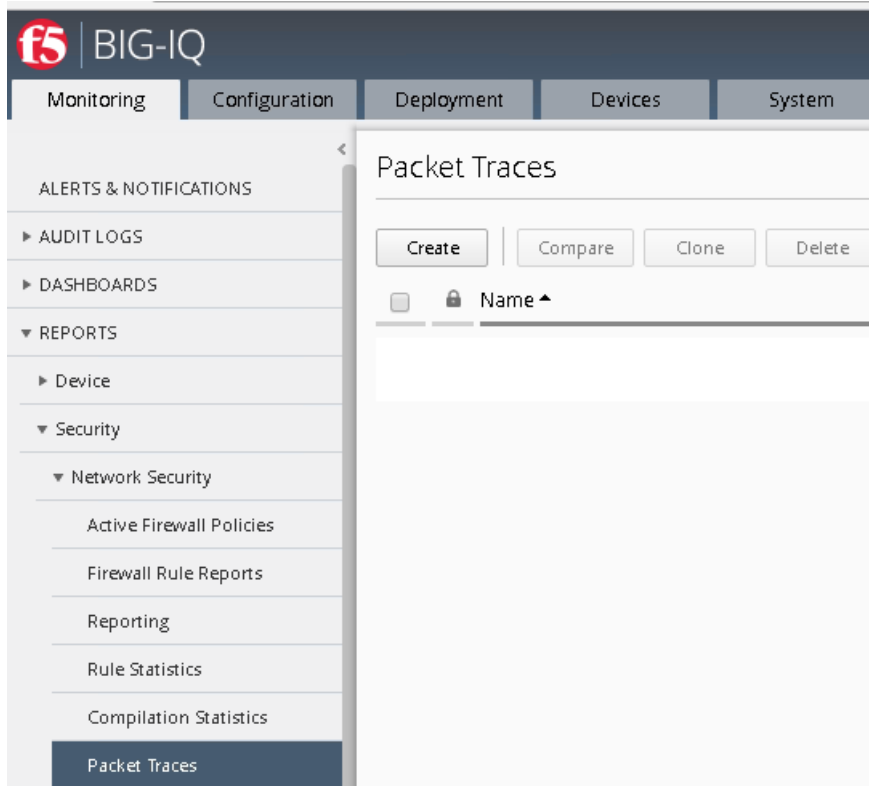
#### Workflow 1: Managing AFM from BIG-IQ

Day 4, it turns out no one thought about managing the new web and application servers, as such SSH is blocked to both devices. Let's first validate this by using the packet tester tool within BIG-IQ, note this is the same tool within BIG-IP with one major exception. Within BIG-IQ you can trace a packet through **more than one firewall**. This is very useful if you have multiple AFM devices in a packets path, now you can test the flow end to end from one central location.

#### Task 1 – Packet Tracer

1. Navigate to **Monitoring > Reports > Security > Network Security > Packet Traces**





2. Click on the “Create” button from the top menu.
3. Complete the following information
  - Name – ssh\_trace
  - Protocol – tcp
  - TCP Flags – Syn
  - Source IP Address – 10.20.0.200
  - Source Port – 9999
  - Destination IP Address – 10.30.0.50
  - Destination Port – 22
  - Use Staged Policy – No
  - Trigger Log – No
4. Under the Devices section click “Add” (notice you’ll see all the devices with AFM provision listed), for our lab however; just add **bigip2.dnstest.lab**

Devices

Available

Items: 1

| <input type="checkbox"/> | Name               | Address       | Group Name     |
|--------------------------|--------------------|---------------|----------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | bigip1.dnctest.lab | 192.168.1.100 | Firewall Group |

Selected

Selected 1 of 1

| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Name               | Address       | Group Name     |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------|---------------|----------------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | bigip2.dnctest.lab | 192.168.1.150 | Firewall Group |

→

←

Add Cancel

- Select the “/Common/OUTSIDE” Vlan as the Source VLAN from the dropdown.

When completed your screen should look like the screen shot below:

Packet Parameters

|                        |                                                                                                                                                                                           |  |  |
|------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|
| Name                   | ssh_trace                                                                                                                                                                                 |  |  |
| Protocol               | tcp                                                                                                                                                                                       |  |  |
| TCP Flags              | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SYN <input type="checkbox"/> ACK <input type="checkbox"/> RST <input type="checkbox"/> URG <input type="checkbox"/> PUSH <input type="checkbox"/> FIN |  |  |
| Source IP Address      | 10.20.0.200                                                                                                                                                                               |  |  |
| Source Port            | 9999                                                                                                                                                                                      |  |  |
| TTL                    | 255                                                                                                                                                                                       |  |  |
| Destination IP Address | 10.30.0.50                                                                                                                                                                                |  |  |
| Destination Port       | 22                                                                                                                                                                                        |  |  |
| Use Staged Policy      | <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No                                                                                                                             |  |  |
| Trigger Log            | <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No                                                                                                                             |  |  |

Devices

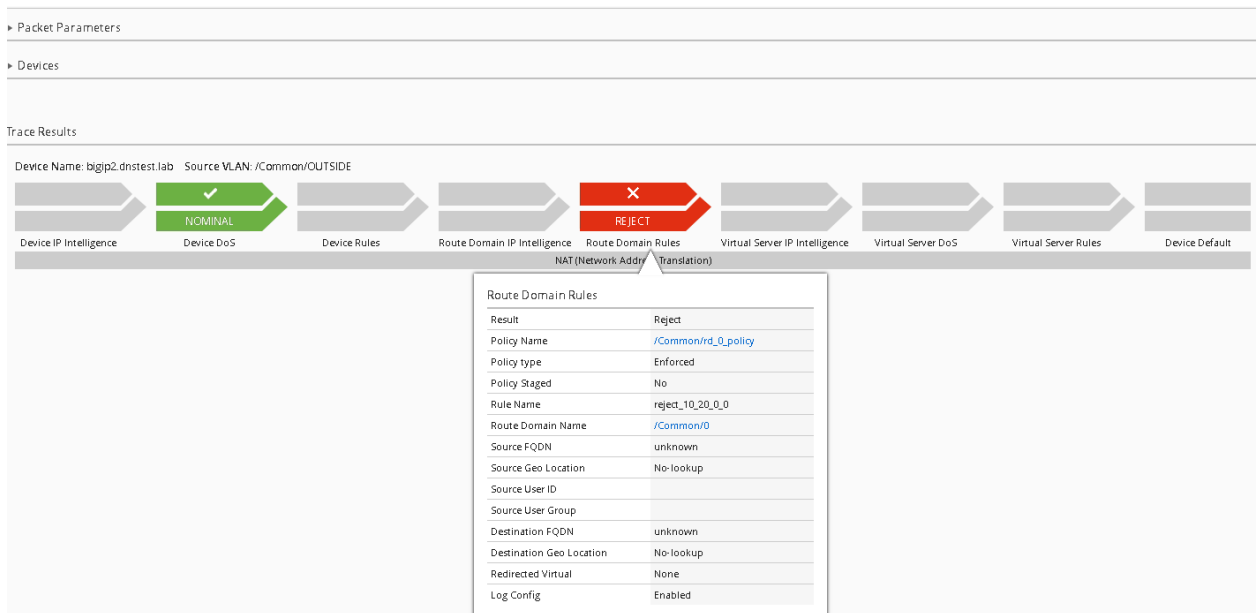
Add Delete

| <input type="checkbox"/> | Device             | Source VLAN     |   |   |
|--------------------------|--------------------|-----------------|---|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | bigip2.dnctest.lab | /Common/OUTSIDE | + | x |

☒ Apply these VLANs to all Devices.

- Click “Run Trace”

You can see from the trace results; the traffic is indeed being denied



Another nice feature of Packet Trace within BIG-IP is the ability to clone a trace, when you complete the next two tasks, we'll return to the packet tracer tool to re-run the results using the clone option. Additionally, the traces are saved and can be reviewed later, this can be very helpful in long troubleshooting situations where application teams are asking for results after changes are made to policies.

Follow the steps below to allow SSH access to both devices using BIG-IP as a central management tool.

## Task 2 – Modify Rule Lists

1. Navigate to the **Configuration > Security > Network Security > Rule Lists**
2. Notice the previously created rule lists have been imported into BIG-IP
3. Click on the **"application\_rule\_list"**
4. Click **Create Rule** button.
5. Click on the pencil (edit rule) of the newly created rule listed with **Id** of **2**.
6. Create a new rule with the below information. Be prepared to scroll to find all the options

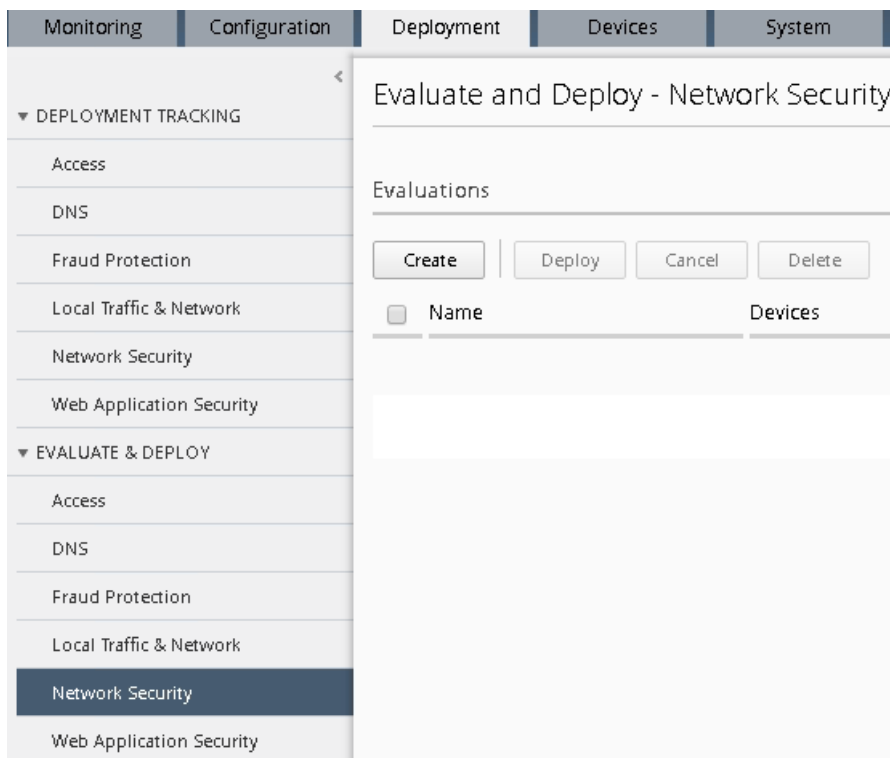
|                            |                   |
|----------------------------|-------------------|
| <b>Name</b>                | allow_ssh         |
| <b>Source Address</b>      | 10.20.0.200       |
| <b>Source Port</b>         | any               |
| <b>Source VLAN</b>         | any               |
| <b>Destination Address</b> | 10.30.0.50        |
| <b>Destination Port</b>    | 22                |
| <b>Action</b>              | Accept-Decisively |
| <b>Protocol</b>            | TCP               |
| <b>State</b>               | enabled           |
| <b>Log</b>                 | True (checked)    |

7. Click **Save & Close** when finished.
8. Repeat the same procedure for the web\_rule\_list, be sure to change the destination to 10.30.0.50, all other setting remains the same.

### Task 3 – Deploy the Firewall Policy and related configuration objects

Now that the desired firewall configuration has been created on the BIG-IQ, you need to deploy it to the BIG-IP. In this task, you create the deployment, verify it, and deploy it.

1. From the top navigation bar, click on **Deployment** (tab).
2. Click on the **EVALUATE & DEPLOY** section on the left to expand it.
3. Click on **Network Security** in the expansion.



4. Click on the top **Create** button under the **Evaluations** section.
5. Give your evaluation a name (ex: **deploy\_afm1**).
6. Evaluation **Source** should be **Current Changes** (default).
7. Source Scope should be **All Changes** (default)
8. Remove Unused Objects should be **Remove Unused Objects** (default)
9. Target Device(s) should be **Device**.
10. Select **bigip2.dnstest.lab** from the list of Available devices and move it to Selected area.

← ... / New Evaluation - Network Security \*

General

Name

Description

Evaluation

Source ☒ Current Changes ☐ Existing Snapshot

Source Scope ☒ All Changes ☐ Partial Changes

Unused Objects ☒ Remove Unused Objects ☐ Keep Unused Objects

Target Device(s)

| Available          |               | Selected           |               |
|--------------------|---------------|--------------------|---------------|
| Name               | Address       | Name               | Address       |
| bigip1.dnstest.lab | 192.168.1.100 | bigip2.dnstest.lab | 192.168.1.150 |

- Click the **Create** button at the bottom right of the page.

You should be redirected to the main **Evaluate and Deploy** page.

This will start the evaluation process in which BIG-IQ compares its working configuration to the configuration active on each BIG-IP. This can take a few moments to complete.

The **Status** section should be dynamically updating... (What states do you see?)

Once the status shows **Evaluation Complete** you can view the evaluation results.

---

**Note:** Before selecting to deploy, feel free to select the differences indicated to see the proposed deployment changes. This is your check before making changes on a BIG-IP.

---

- Click the number listed under **Differences – Firewall**.

- Scroll through the list of changes to be deployed.

- Click on a few to review in more detail.

What differences do you see from the **Deployed on BIG-IP** section and on **BIG-IQ**?

Do you see the new rules you created in BIG-IQ? Ya should...

- Click **Cancel**.

Deploy your changes by checking the box next to your evaluation **deploy\_afm1**.

- With the box checked, click the **Deploy** button.

Your evaluation should move to the **Deployments** section.

After deploying, the status should change to **Deployment Complete**.

- This will take a moment to complete. Once completed, log in to the BIG-IP and verify that the changes have been deployed to the AFM configuration.

Congratulations, you just deployed your first AFM policy via BIG-IQ!

Review the configuration deployed to the BIG-IP units.

On **bigip2.dnstest.lab**: (<https://192.168.1.150>)

- Navigate to Security > Network Firewall > Policies.
- Click on rd\_0\_policy and expand the rule lists

Are the two rules you created in BIG-IQ listed for this newly deployed firewall policy?

| ID | Name                                  | State   | Protocol | Source                    | Destination                            | Actions           | Logging |
|----|---------------------------------------|---------|----------|---------------------------|----------------------------------------|-------------------|---------|
| 1  | <a href="#">application_rule_list</a> | Enabled |          | Any                       |                                        |                   |         |
|    | allow_http                            | Enabled | TCP      | Any                       | Addresses<br>10.40.0.50<br>Ports<br>80 | Accept-Decisively | Yes     |
|    | allow_ssh                             | Enabled | TCP      | Addresses<br>10.20.0.200  | Addresses<br>10.40.0.50<br>Ports<br>22 | Accept-Decisively | Yes     |
| 2  | <a href="#">web_rule_list</a>         | Enabled |          | Any                       |                                        |                   |         |
|    | allow_http                            | Enabled | TCP      | Any                       | Addresses<br>10.30.0.50<br>Ports<br>80 | Accept-Decisively | Yes     |
|    | allow_ssh                             | Enabled | TCP      | Addresses<br>10.20.0.200  | Addresses<br>10.30.0.50<br>Ports<br>22 | Accept-Decisively | Yes     |
| 3  | <a href="#">reject_10_20_0_0</a>      | Enabled | Any      | Addresses<br>10.20.0.0/24 | Any                                    | Reject            | Yes     |

**Network >> Route Domains >> 0**

Settings Properties **Security**

**Policy Settings:** Basic ▾

|                             |                                                                           |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Route Domain ID             | 0                                                                         |
| VLANs                       | external, http-tunnel, internal, socks-tunnel                             |
| Network Firewall            | Enforcement: Enabled... ▾ Policy: Policy_Forward ▾<br>Staging: Disabled ▾ |
| Network Address Translation | None ▾                                                                    |
| IP Intelligence             | None ▾                                                                    |
| Service Policy              | None ▾                                                                    |

Update

Test Access:

1. Open a new Web browser and access <http://10.30.0.50>
2. Open Putty and access 10.30.0.50

### Task 4 – Packet Tracer (continued)

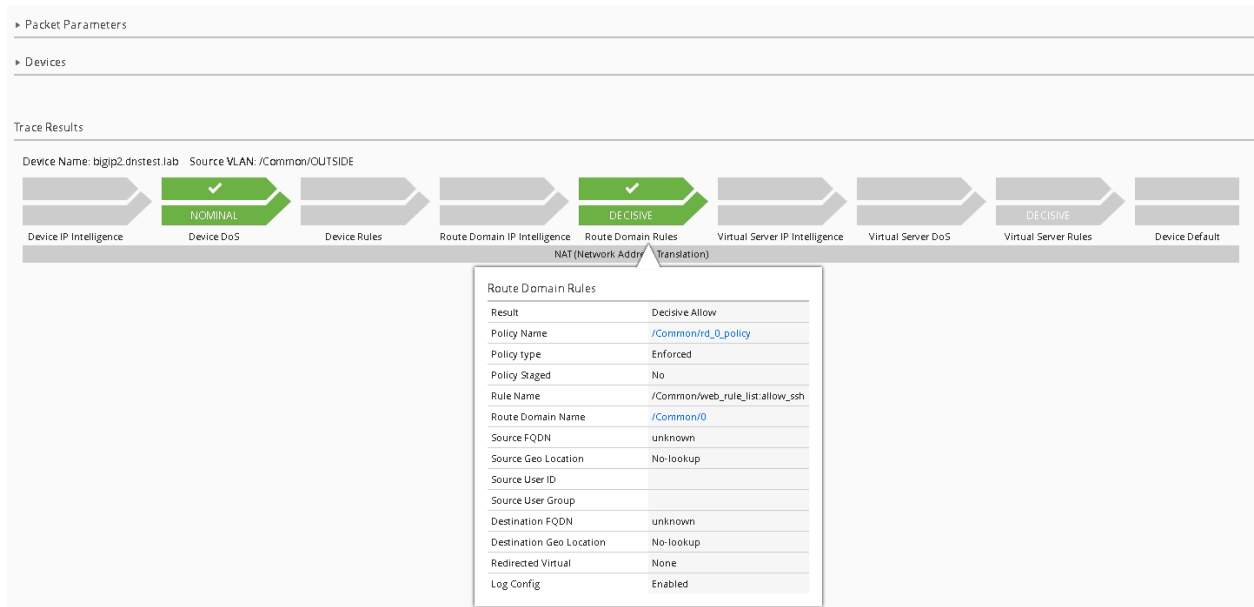
#. Navigate to the Monitoring tab Reports Security Network Security Packet Tracers

1. Highlight the previous trace (ssh\_trace) and click on the “Clone” button

| Packet Traces                                                                  |           |                    |                            |          |          |             |             |            |           |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|--------------------|----------------------------|----------|----------|-------------|-------------|------------|-----------|
| <div> <div>Create Compare Clone Delete</div> <div>Selected 1 of 1</div> </div> |           |                    |                            |          |          |             |             |            |           |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>                                            | Name ^    | Devices            | Date Created ▾             | Status   | Protocol | Source IP   | Source Port | Dest IP    | Dest Port |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>                                            | ssh_trace | bigip2.dnctest.lab | Jul 09, 2018 04:50:54(EDT) | FINISHED | tcp      | 10.20.0.200 | 9999        | 10.30.0.50 | 22        |

You'll notice all the previously entered values are pre-populated, you now can make any changes if necessary (maybe the application team realized the source port of the flow is not random).

2. Click “Run Trace”



SUCCESS!!

The history within the tool makes Root Cause Analysis (RCA) reports very easy, this allows the security team to show a denied flow and subsequent permitted flow.

## 1.6.2 Workflow 2: Configure Network Security and DoS Event Logging

### Task 1 – Configure Network Security and DoS Event Logging

You enable Network Security event logging using the virtual servers displayed in the context list

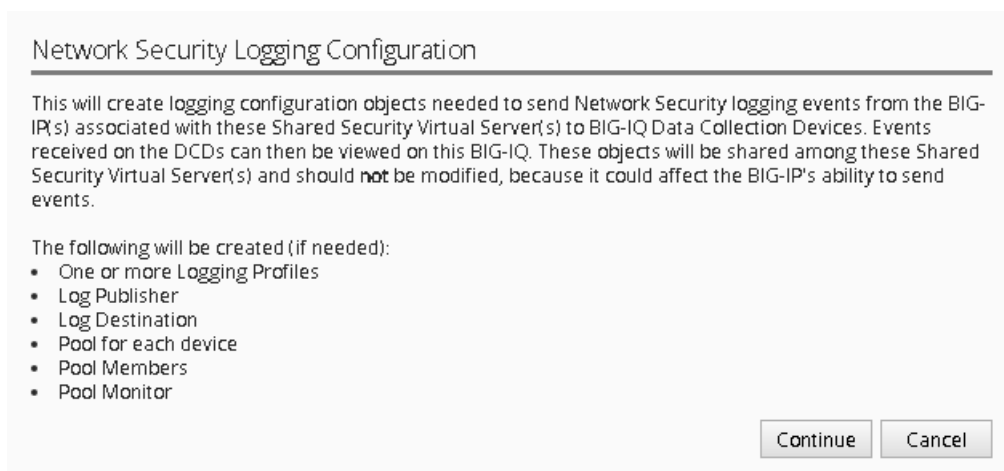
1. Navigate to the Configuration Security Network Security Contexts
2. Check the box next to the IPV4\_TCP VIP
3. Select “Configure Logging” from the top buttons

Contexts

Deploy Configure Logging Disable Logging Selected 1 of 19

| <input type="checkbox"/>            | Name ^            | Partition | Firewall Type | IP Address     | Device             | Enforced Policy                    |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------|-----------|---------------|----------------|--------------------|------------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/>            | 0                 | Common    | route-domain  |                | bigip1.dnctest.lab |                                    |
| <input type="checkbox"/>            | 0                 | Common    | route-domain  |                | bigip2.dnctest.lab | <a href="#">Common/rd_0_policy</a> |
| <input type="checkbox"/>            | APP-10.40.0.150   | Common    | self-ip       | 10.40.0.150/24 | bigip2.dnctest.lab |                                    |
| <input type="checkbox"/>            | DMZ-10.30.0.150   | Common    | self-ip       | 10.30.0.150/24 | bigip2.dnctest.lab |                                    |
| <input type="checkbox"/>            | global            | Common    | global        |                | bigip2.dnctest.lab | <a href="#">Common/Global</a>      |
| <input type="checkbox"/>            | global            | Common    | global        |                | bigip1.dnctest.lab |                                    |
| <input type="checkbox"/>            | inside-10.10.0.11 | Common    | self-ip       | 10.10.0.11/24  | bigip1.dnctest.lab |                                    |
| <input type="checkbox"/>            | IPV4_ANY          | Common    | vip           | 0.0.0.0        | bigip2.dnctest.lab |                                    |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | IPV4_TCP          | Common    | vip           | 0.0.0.0        | bigip2.dnctest.lab |                                    |

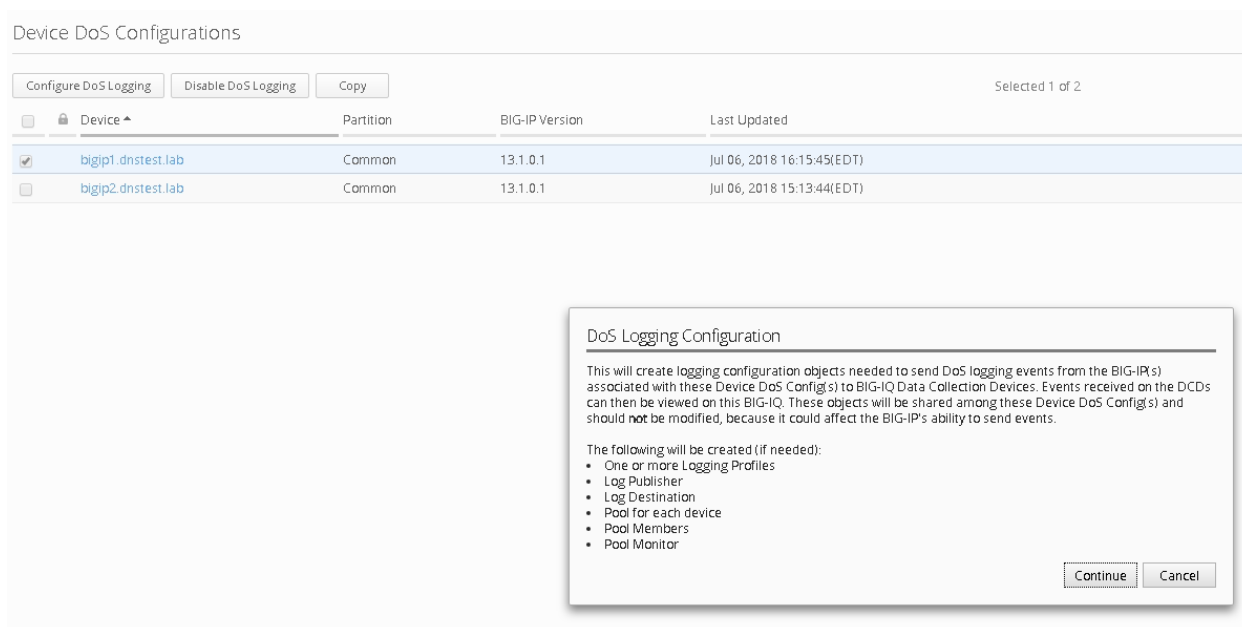
4. You will receive a configuration message alerting you to the changes about to be made to the device, click Continue



This will now configure a logging profile, associated pools, monitors and all necessary configuration to send logs to the Data Collection Device (DCD).

In the spirit of central management, we're also going to configure the DoS event logging, so we only must perform one deployment on both devices.

1. Navigate to Configuration Security Shared Security DoS Protection Device DoS Configurations
2. Highlight `bigip1.dnctest.lab` and click the "Configure DoS Logging" button from the top.



3. Once again you will receive a configuration message, click continue
4. Once completed navigate to the Deployments tab
 

As most of the configuration is "LTM" related you will first need to deploy the LTM configuration.
5. Navigate to Evaluate & Deploy
6. Select Local Traffic & Network Traffic
7. Create an evaluation named "logging\_configuration", leave all other defaults and select both devices, once finished, create the evaluation.



Feel free to examine the changes in the evaluation, when satisfied deploy the changes.

- Once the LTM configuration is deployed, you'll need to also deploy the Network Security portion of the changes.

Navigate to Deployment Evaluate & Deploy Network Security.

Again, create an evaluation and subsequent deployment for both devices.

## Task 2 – Evaluate Network Firewall Events

- Browse to <http://10.30.0.50> once again (or refresh in your tabs).
- Within BIG-IQ, navigate to Monitoring Network Security Firewall
- Click on a line item for enriched information in the window below as shown

Network Security: Firewall Events

All Devices5 second refresh

Selected 1 of 77Filter...

| Time                      | Host               | Context        | Name     | Policy Type | Policy Name | Rule                 | Src Subscriber L | Src Sub... | Src Geo | Src FQDN | Src Address | Src Port | Src VLAN/Tunnel | Dest Geo | Dest FQDN | Dest A... | Dest Port |
|---------------------------|--------------------|----------------|----------|-------------|-------------|----------------------|------------------|------------|---------|----------|-------------|----------|-----------------|----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| Jul 06, 2016 16:49:46L... | bigip2.dnptest.lab | Virtual Server | IPV4_UDP | Enforced    | (Default)   | (Default)            |                  |            | Unknown | unknown  | 10.20.0.200 | 52778    | OUTSIDE         | Unknown  | unknown   | 239.2...  | 1900      |
| Jul 06, 2016 16:49:44L... | bigip2.dnptest.lab | Virtual Server | IPV4_UDP | Enforced    | (Default)   | (Default)            |                  |            | Unknown | unknown  | 10.20.0.200 | 52778    | OUTSIDE         | Unknown  | unknown   | 239.2...  | 1900      |
| Jul 06, 2016 16:49:43L... | bigip2.dnptest.lab | Virtual Server | IPV4_UDP | Enforced    | (Default)   | (Default)            |                  |            | Unknown | unknown  | 10.20.0.200 | 52778    | OUTSIDE         | Unknown  | unknown   | 239.2...  | 1900      |
| Jul 06, 2016 16:49:43L... | bigip2.dnptest.lab | Virtual Server | IPV4_UDP | Enforced    | (Default)   | (Default)            |                  |            | Unknown | unknown  | 10.20.0.200 | 52778    | OUTSIDE         | Unknown  | unknown   | 239.2...  | 1900      |
| Jul 06, 2016 16:49:16L... | bigip2.dnptest.lab | Virtual Server | IPV4_TCP | -           |             |                      |                  |            | Unknown |          | 10.20.0.200 | 58249    | OUTSIDE         | Unknown  |           | 10.40...  | 80        |
| Jul 06, 2016 16:49:13L... | bigip2.dnptest.lab | Virtual Server | IPV4_TCP | -           |             |                      |                  |            | Unknown |          | 10.20.0.200 | 58250    | OUTSIDE         | Unknown  |           | 10.40...  | 80        |
| Jul 06, 2016 16:49:09L... | bigip2.dnptest.lab | Virtual Server | IPV4_TCP | -           |             |                      |                  |            | Unknown |          | 10.20.0.200 | 58254    | OUTSIDE         | Unknown  |           | 10.30...  | 80        |
| Jul 06, 2016 16:49:05L... | bigip2.dnptest.lab | Virtual Server | IPV4_TCP | -           |             |                      |                  |            | Unknown |          | 10.20.0.200 | 58249    | OUTSIDE         | Unknown  |           | 10.40...  | 80        |
| Jul 06, 2016 16:49:05L... | bigip2.dnptest.lab | Virtual Server | IPV4_TCP | Enforced    | rd_0_policy | /Common/applicati... |                  |            | Unknown | unknown  | 10.20.0.200 | 58249    | OUTSIDE         | Unknown  | unknown   | 10.40...  | 80        |
| Jul 06, 2016 16:49:03L... | bigip2.dnptest.lab | Virtual Server | IPV4_TCP | Enforced    | rd_0_policy | /Common/web.rul...   |                  |            | Unknown | unknown  | 10.20.0.200 | 58254    | OUTSIDE         | Unknown  | unknown   | 10.30...  | 80        |
| Jul 06, 2016 16:49:03L... | bigip2.dnptest.lab | Virtual Server | IPV4_TCP | -           |             |                      |                  |            | Unknown |          | 10.20.0.200 | 58254    | OUTSIDE         | Unknown  |           | 10.30...  | 80        |

↑↓

Date: Jul 06, 2016 16:49:05(EDT)

Context Type: Virtual Server

Context: /Common/IPv4\_TCP

ACL Policy Type: Enforced

ACL Policy Name: rd\_0\_policy

Rule Name: /Common/application\_rule\_list.allow\_http

Hostname: bigip2.dnptest.lab

Host IP: 192.168.1.150

Vendor: F5

Product: Advanced Firewall Module

Version: 13.1.01.0.0.8

VLAN: OUTSIDE

Translated VLAN: /Common/APP

Route Domain: 0

Translated Route Domain: 0

Flow ID: 00075665705b314

Type: Network Event

Severity: 8

Msg Number: 23003137

Action: Accept decisively

Source Destination: Unknown

Src User: unknown

Src User Group: unknown

Source IP: 10.20.0.200

Source Port: 58249

Source FQDN: unknown

Translated Src IP: 10.20.0.200

Translated Src Port: 58249

Destination IP: 10.40.0.50

Destination Port: 80

Destination Geo: Unknown

Destination FQDN: unknown

Translated Dest IP: 10.40.0.50

Translated Dest Port: 80

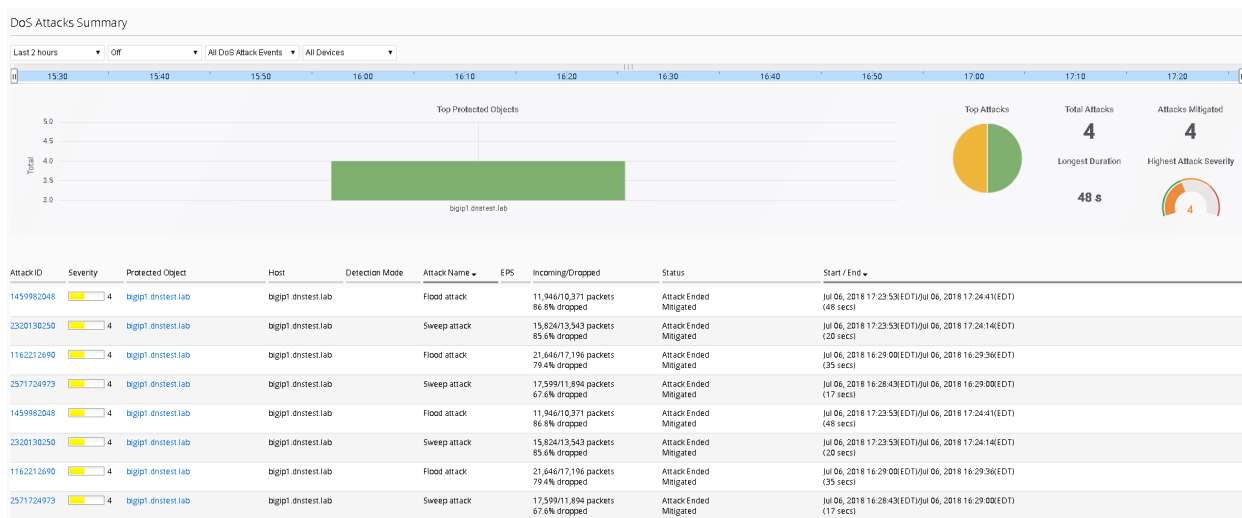
IP Protocol: TCP

Translated Protocol: TCP

Feel free to view other logs to see the data presented.

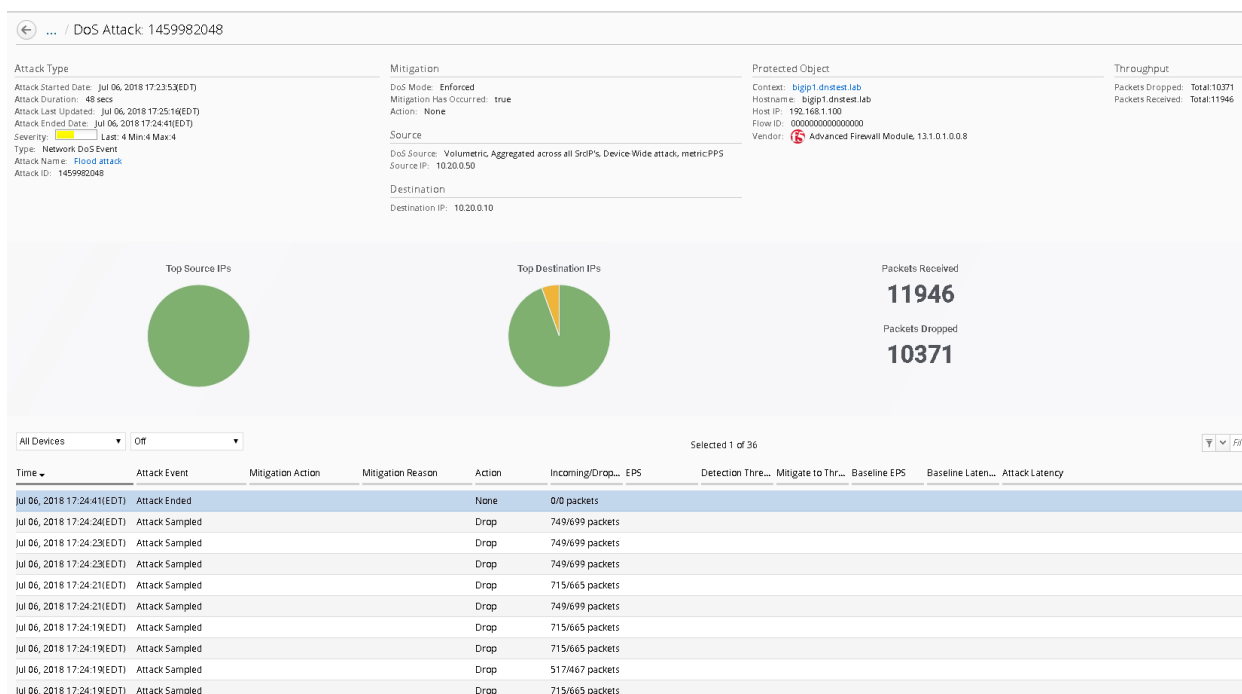
## Task 3 – Evaluate DoS Events

- Open a few separate windows to the attack host. We will launch a few attacks at once to see the value of consolidated reporting within BIG-IQ (there is a text document on the jumbox desktop which contains all of the attack commands).
- Launch a few attacks at once and navigate to Monitoring Events –DoS DoS Summary



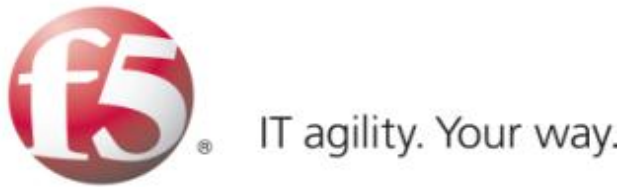
3. From here you have a consolidated view of all your devices and attacks.

Click on one of the attack ID's for enriched information about the attack



This concludes the lab. You have had quite the eventful first week at Initech! You have successfully allowed communication to a new webserver, you tuned and defended against several DoS attacks, you then configured BIG-IQ for central device management and monitoring and lastly, you're now managing AFM within BIG-IQ. I think you deserve Friday off!!

Written for TMOS 13.1.0.1/BIG-IQ 6.0



## 1.7 Lab 6 - iControl REST API

### 1.7.1 Lab 6 Overview

It's Friday, you've made it through week one, but it's not over yet. After another meeting with the Bob's they've decided they want to explore the SecOps world and configure devices through the REST API. Before we proceed let's learn a little about what REST is and how to interact with the F5 API, also known as iControl.

### 1.7.2 About Representational State Transfer

Representational State Transfer (REST) describes an architectural style of web services where clients and servers exchange representations of resources. The REST model defines a resource as a source of information and defines a representation as the data that describes the state of a resource. REST web services use the HTTP protocol to communicate between a client and a server, specifically by means of the POST, GET, PUT, and DELETE methods to create, read, update, and delete elements or collections. In general terms, REST queries resources for the configuration objects of a BIG-IP® system, and creates, deletes, or modifies the representations of those configuration objects. The iControl® REST implementation follows the REST model by:

- Using REST as a resource-based interface, and creating API methods based on nouns.
  - Employing a stateless protocol and MIME data types, as well as taking advantage of the authentication mechanisms and caching built into the HTTP protocol.
- Supporting the JSON format for document encoding.
  - Representing the hierarchy of resources and collections with a Uniform Resource Identifier (URI) structure.
  - Returning HTTP response codes to indicate success or failure of an operation.
- Including links in resource references to accommodate discovery.

### 1.7.3 About URI format

The iControl® REST API enables the management of a BIG-IP® device by using web service requests. A principle of the REST architecture describes the identification of a resource by means of a Uniform Resource Identifier (URI). You can specify a URI with a web service request to create, read, update, or delete some component or module of a BIG-IP system configuration. In the context of REST architecture, the system configuration is the representation of a resource. A URI identifies the name of a web resource; in this case, the URI also represents the tree structure of modules and components in TMSH.

In iControl REST, the URI structure for all requests includes the string `/mgmt/tm/` to identify the namespace for traffic management. Any identifiers that follow the endpoint are resource collections.

Tip: Use the default administrative account, admin, for requests to iControl REST. Once you are familiar with the API, you can create user accounts for iControl REST users with various permissions.

<https://management-ip/mgmt/tm/module>

The URI in the previous example designates all of the TMSH subordinate modules and components in the specified module. iControl REST refers to this entity as an organizing collection. An organizing collection contains links to other resources. The management-ip component of the URI is the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) or IP address of a BIG-IP device.

Important: iControl REST only supports secure access through HTTPS, so you must include credentials with each REST call. Use the same credentials you use for the BIG-IP device manager interface.

For example, use the following URI to access all the components and subordinate modules in the LTM module:

<https://management-ip/mgmt/tm/ltm>

The URI in the following example designates all of the subordinate modules and components in the specified sub-module. iControl REST refers to this entity as a collection; a collection contains resources.

<https://management-ip/mgmt/tm/module/sub-module>

The URI in the following example designates the details of the specified component. The Traffic Management Shell (TMSH) Reference documents the hierarchy of modules and components, and identifies details of each component. iControl REST refers to this entity as a resource. A resource may contain links to sub-collections.

<https://management-ip/mgmt/tm/module/{sub-module}/component>

### 1.7.4 About reserved ASCII characters

To accommodate the BIG-IP® configuration objects that use characters, which are not part of the unreserved ASCII character set, use a percent sign (%) and two hexadecimal digits to represent them in a URI. The unreserved character set consists of: [A - Z] [a - z] [0 - 9] dash (-), underscore (\_), period (.), and tilde (~).

You must encode any characters that are not part of the unreserved character set for inclusion in a URI scheme. For example, an IP address in a non-default route domain that contains a percent sign to indicate an address in a specific route domain, such as 192.168.25.90%3, should be encoded to replace the %character with %25.

### 1.7.5 About REST resource identifiers

A URI is the representation of a resource that consists of a protocol, an address, and a path structure to identify a resource and optional query parameters. Because the representation of folder and partition names in TMSH often includes a forward slash (/), URI encoding of folder and partition names must use a different character to represent a forward slash in iControl®

To accommodate the forward slash in a resource name, iControl REST maps the forward slash to a tilde (~) character. When a resource name includes a forward slash (/) in its name, substitute a tilde (~) for the forward slash in the path. For example, a resource name, such as /Common/plist1, should be modified to the format shown here:

<https://management-ip/mgmt/tm/security/firewall/port-list/~Common~plist1>

### 1.7.6 About Postman – REST Client

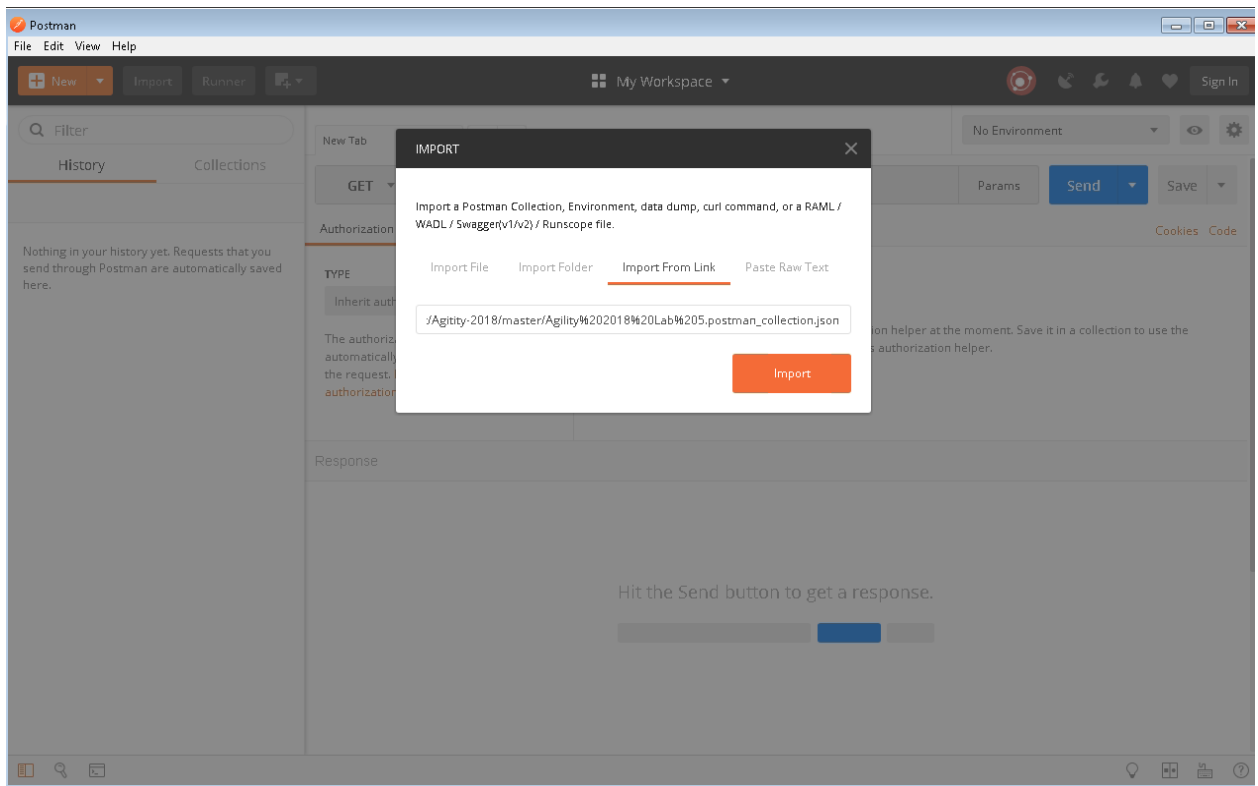
Postman helps you be more efficient while working with APIs. Postman is a scratch-your-own-itch project. The need for it arose while one of the developers was creating an API for his project. After looking around for a number of tools, nothing felt just right. The primary features added initially were a history of sent requests and collections. You can find Postman here - [www.getpostman.com](http://www.getpostman.com).

### 1.7.7 Simulating and defeating a Christmas Tree Packet Attack

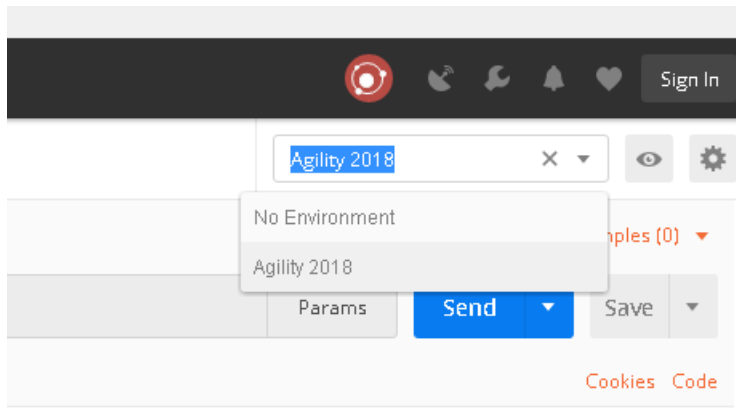
Now that we understand what REST is let's use it to defeat Joanna one last time. Joanna was feeling festive for her final attack. In this example, we'll set the BIG-IP to detect and mitigate Joanna's attack where all flags on a TCP packet are set. This is commonly referred to as a Christmas tree packet and is intended to increase processing on in-path network devices and end hosts to the target.

To interact with the REST API, we'll be using POSTMan. We'll then use the hping utility to send 25,000 packets to our server, with random source IPs to simulate a DDoS attack where multiple hosts are attacking our server. We'll set the SYN, ACK, FIN, RST, URG, PUSH, Xmas and Ymas TCP flags.

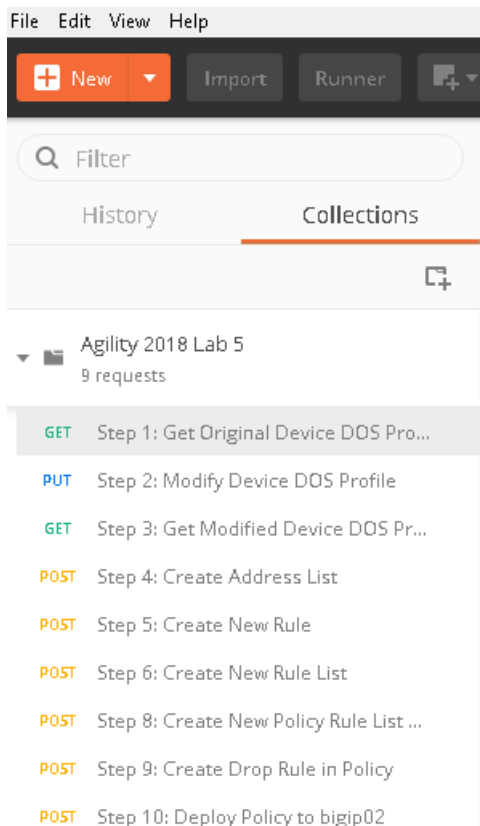
1. POSTMan is installed as an application and can be accessed from the desktop of the Jumpbox
2. Once you launch POSTMan You'll then want to import the API calls for the lab as well as the environment variables
  - There is a notepad on the desktop labeled "Postman Links"
  - Within POSTman and click on the "Import" link near the top and then select "Import from Link"
  - Copy and paste the **collection** link from within the notepad and select "Import"
  - Copy and paste the **environment** link from within the notepad and select "Import"



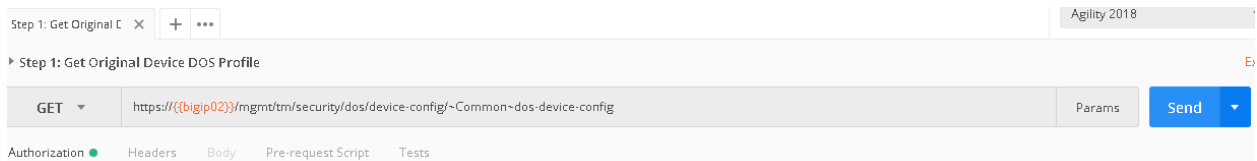
- Before proceeding verify the Agility 2018 environment is selected from the drop down in the top right of POSTman



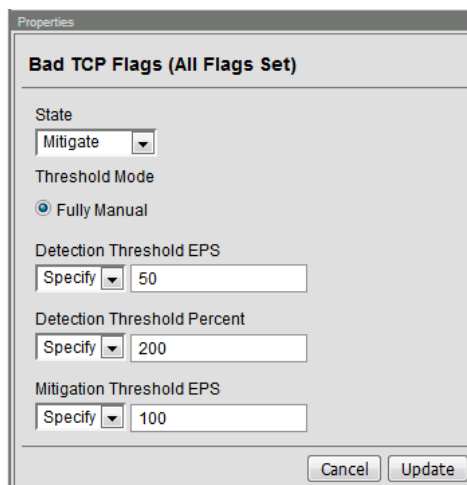
- In the bigip01.dnctest.lab (<https://192.168.1.100>) web UI, navigate to Security > DoS Protection > Device Configuration > Network Security.
- Expand the **Bad-Header-TCP** category in the vectors list.
- Click on the **Bad TCP Flags (All Flags Set)** vector name and take note of the current settings
- Within POSTman open the collection "Agility 2018 Lab 5"



- Run step 1 by clicking on the send button to the right



9. The output from the GET request can be reviewed, this is showing you all the device-dos configuration options and settings. Search for “bad-tcp-flags-all-set” by clicking ‘ctrl +f’. Note the values as they are currently configured. We are now going to modify the Bad TCP Flags (All Flags Set) attack vector. To do so run step 2 of the collection by highlighting the collection and click “Send”.
10. You can now execute step 3 in the collection and verify the changes, you can also verify the changes in the BIG-IP web UI.



11. Open the BIG-IP SSH session and scroll the ltm log in real time with the following command: `tail -f /var/log/ltm`
12. On the attack host, launch the attack by issuing the following command on the BASH prompt:  
`sudo hping3 10.20.0.10 --flood --rand-source --destport 80 -c 25000 --syn --ack --fin --rst --push --urg --xmas --ymas`
13. You'll see the BIG-IP ltm log show that the attack has been detected:

```
Feb 6 09:36:09 bigip1 err tmm[10663]: 01010252:3: A Enforced Device DOS attack
start was detected for vector Bad TCP flags (all flags set), Attack ID 411238769
1.
```

14. After approximately 60 seconds, press **CTRL+C** to stop the attack.

```
ubuntu@attackhost:~$ sudo hping3 10.20.0.10 --flood --rand-source --destport 80
-c 25000 --syn --ack --fin --rst --push --urg --xmas --ymas
HPING 10.20.0.10 (ens3 10.20.0.10): RSAFPUXY set, 40 headers + 0 data bytes
hping in flood mode, no replies will be shown
^C
--- 10.20.0.10 hping statistic ---
361447 packets transmitted, 0 packets received, 100% packet loss
round-trip min/avg/max = 0.0/0.0/0.0 ms
ubuntu@attackhost:~$
```

15. Navigate to **Security > DoS Protection > DoS Overview** (you may need to refresh or set the auto refresh to 10 seconds). You'll notice from here you can see all the details of the active attacks. You can also modify an attack vector right from this screen by clicking on the attack vector and modifying the fly out.

| Security > DoS Protection : DoS Overview                                                    |                               |          |                       |          |         |                     |           |                      |                         |       |        |           |           |                      |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|----------|-----------------------|----------|---------|---------------------|-----------|----------------------|-------------------------|-------|--------|-----------|-----------|----------------------|
| <div> DoS Overview DoS Profiles Device Configuration Signatures Eviction Policy List </div> |                               |          |                       |          |         |                     |           |                      |                         |       |        |           |           |                      |
| View Filter                                                                                 |                               |          |                       |          |         |                     |           |                      |                         |       |        |           |           |                      |
| Filter Type: DoS Attack                                                                     |                               |          |                       |          |         |                     |           |                      |                         |       |        |           |           |                      |
| Auto Refresh: Disabled Refresh                                                              |                               |          |                       |          |         |                     |           |                      |                         |       |        |           |           |                      |
| Enter Vector Name                                                                           |                               |          |                       |          |         |                     |           |                      |                         |       |        |           |           |                      |
| Attack Status                                                                               |                               |          | Average Aggregate EPS |          |         | Current Dropped EPS |           |                      | Detection Threshold EPS |       |        |           |           |                      |
| Profile                                                                                     | Attack Vector                 | State    | Family                | Learning | Context | Aggregate           | Bad Actor | Attacked Destination | Current                 | 1 min | 1 hour | Aggregate | Bad Actor | Attacked Destination |
| dos-device-config                                                                           | Bad TCP flags (all flags set) | Mitigate | Network               | Ready    | Device  | Detected            | None      | None                 | 0                       | 728   | 0      | 0         | 0         | 0                    |
|                                                                                             |                               |          |                       |          |         |                     |           |                      | Fully Manual            |       |        | 50        |           |                      |
|                                                                                             |                               |          |                       |          |         |                     |           |                      |                         |       |        | N/A       |           |                      |
|                                                                                             |                               |          |                       |          |         |                     |           |                      |                         |       |        | N/A       |           |                      |

16. Return to the BIG-IP web UI. Navigate to **Security > Event Logs > DoS > Network > Events**. Observe the log entries showing the details surrounding the attack detection and mitigation.

| Security > Event Logs : DoS : Network : Events                                 |            |      |                |                               |        |            |                  |       |  |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|------|----------------|-------------------------------|--------|------------|------------------|-------|--|
| <div> Protocol Network Network Address Translation DoS Logging Profiles </div> |            |      |                |                               |        |            |                  |       |  |
| Destination                                                                    |            |      |                |                               |        |            |                  |       |  |
| Context                                                                        | Address    | Port | Event          | Type                          | Action | Attack ID  | Packets In / sec | Dropp |  |
| evic                                                                           |            |      | Attack Stopped | Bad TCP flags (all flags set) | None   | 4112387691 | 0                | 0     |  |
| evic                                                                           | 10.20.0.10 | 80   | Attack Sampled | Bad TCP flags (all flags set) | Drop   | 4112387691 | 597              | 597   |  |
| evic                                                                           | 10.20.0.10 | 80   | Attack Sampled | Bad TCP flags (all flags set) | Drop   | 4112387691 | 593              | 593   |  |
| evic                                                                           | 10.20.0.10 | 80   | Attack Sampled | Bad TCP flags (all flags set) | Drop   | 4112387691 | 601              | 601   |  |

17. Navigate to **Security > Reporting > DoS > Analysis**. Single-click on the attack ID in the filter list to the right of the charts and observe the various statistics around the attack.
18. The same attacks can also be seen in BIG-IQ as demonstrated in the previous lab.

**Congratulations, you have successfully defeated Joanna's festive attack using only the REST API to configure the device!**

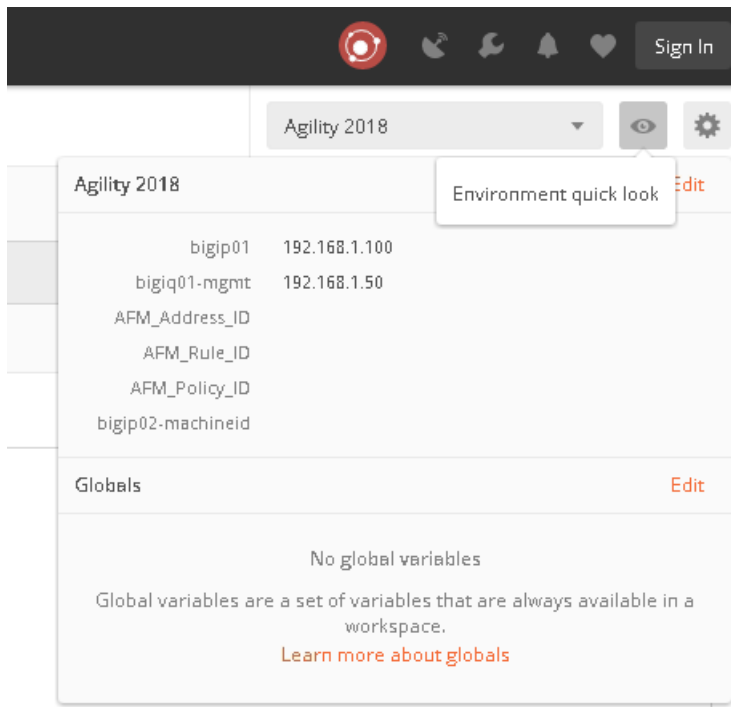
Since it's the end of the week and Joanna is using the same IP address continually, let's block her IP address and her subnet using BIG-IQ. We'll use the REST API to accomplish this as well, as BIG-IQ also has an available REST API.

- Using POSTman run step 4, this will create an address-list within BIG-IQ, the advantage to address-lists is they allow you to group similar objects into a group. In this instance we're going to create an address-list named API\_Naughty\_Address\_List with a host and a network. Once you run the command you'll receive output below. You will need to copy the value returned in the "ID" field as shown below:

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Body Cookies Headers (10) Test Results Status: 200 OK Time: 713 ms Size: 750 B                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Pretty Raw Preview JSON Save Response                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| <pre> 1 { 2   "addresses": [ 3     { 4       "address": "10.20.0.0/24", 5       "description": "Joanna Network" 6     }, 7     { 8       "address": "10.20.0.200", 9       "description": "Joanna Host" 10    } 11  ], 12  "partition": "Common", 13  "name": "API_Naughty_Address_List", 14  "id": "2aa5e56d-6430-3b7c-8ae5-1322bd87d158", 15  "generation": 1, 16  "lastUpdateMicros": 1531862898616051, 17  "kind": "cm:adc-core:working-config:net:ip-address-lists:adcaddressliststate", 18  "selfLink": "https://localhost/mgmt/cm/adc-core/working-config/net/ip-address-lists/2aa5e56d-6430-3b7c-8ae5-1322bd87d158" 19 } </pre> |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

- Take the copied text and paste it into the environment variable for AFM\_Address\_ID. The variables are accessed by clicking on the "eye" icon next to where you selected the Agility 2018 Environment:





3. Click edit and enter the value returned in step 1, when completed click update

MANAGE ENVIRONMENTS

Edit Environment

Agility 2018

|                                     | Key               | Value                                | Bulk Edit |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------|--------------------------------------|-----------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | bigip01           | 192.168.1.100                        |           |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | bigip01-mgmt      | 192.168.1.50                         |           |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | AFM_Address_ID    | 2aa5e56d-6430-3b7c-8ae5-1322bd87d158 | X         |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | AFM_Rule_ID       |                                      |           |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | AFM_Policy_ID     |                                      |           |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | bigip02-machineid |                                      |           |
|                                     | New key           | Value                                |           |

Cancel
Update

4. We will now create a rule list name first, to accomplish this send the call found in step 5. You will need to also capture the "ID" in this step as well. This value will be updated in the AFM\_Rule\_ID field

```

1 {
2   {
3     "rulesCollectionReference": {
4       "link": "https://localhost/mgmt/cm/firewall/working-config/rule-lists/765f87e1-9b96-3142-8a63-95aa6c4232cf/rules",
5       "isSubcollection": true
6     },
7     "partition": "Common",
8     "name": "API_Naughty_Rule_List",
9     "id": "765f87e1-9b96-3142-8a63-95aa6c4232cf",
10    "generation": 1,
11    "lastUpdateMicros": 1531863428459874,
12    "kind": "cm:firewall:working-config:rule-lists:ruleliststate",
13    "selfLink": "https://localhost/mgmt/cm/firewall/working-config/rule-lists/765f87e1-9b96-3142-8a63-95aa6c4232cf"
14  }
15 }

```

5. Take the copied text and paste it into the environment variable for AFM\_Rule\_ID

MANAGE ENVIRONMENTS

Edit Environment

Agility 2018

|                                     | Key               | Value                                | Bulk Edit |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------|--------------------------------------|-----------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | bigip01           | 192.168.1.100                        |           |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | bigip01-mgmt      | 192.168.1.50                         |           |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | AFM_Address_ID    | 2aa5e56d-6430-3b7c-8ae5-1322bd87d158 |           |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | AFM_Rule_ID       | 765f87e1-9b96-3142-8a63-95aa6c4232cf |           |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | AFM_Policy_ID     |                                      |           |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | bigip02-machineid |                                      |           |
|                                     | New key           | Value                                |           |

Cancel
Update

6. At this stage we have created an address-list with objects and saved the ID, we have also created a rule name and saved the ID. The next step is to add an actual rule to the newly created rule named "Naughty\_Rule\_List". Before you send the call-in step 6, take a moment to examine the body of the request. You'll notice in the URI we're referencing the variable of AFM\_Rule\_ID and in the body of the JSON request we're linking the AFM\_Address\_ID to the rule. Once sent you'll receive confirmation similar to the below output.

Step 6: Create New Rule List Examples (0)

POST https://{{bigiq01-mgmt}}/mgmt/cm/firewall/working-config/rule-lists/{{AFM\_Rule\_ID}}/rules Params Send Save

Authorization Headers [2] **Body** Pre-request Script Tests Cookies Code

☒ form-data ☐ x-www-form-urlencoded ☒ raw ☐ binary JSON (application/json)

```

1 {
2   "action": "drop",
3   "evalOrder": 1000,
4   "log": true,
5   "protocol": "any",
6   "source": {
7     "addressListReferences": [
8       {
9         "link": "https://localhost/mgmt/cm/firewall/working-config/address-lists/{{AFM_Address_ID}}"
10      }
11    ]
12  },
13  "state": "enabled",
14  "name": "API_Naughty_Rule_List"
15 }

```

Body Cookies Headers [10] Test Results Status: 200 OK Time: 182 ms Size: 1.07 KB

Pretty Raw Preview JSON Save Response

```

1 {
2   "action": "drop",
3   "evalOrder": 1000,
4   "log": true,
5   "protocol": "any",
6   "source": {
7     "addressListReferences": [
8       {
9         "id": "2aa5e56d-6430-3b7c-8ae5-1322bd87d158",
10        "name": "API_Naughty_Address_List",
11        "kind": "cm:firewall:working-config:address-lists:addressliststate",
12        "partition": "Common",
13        "link": "https://localhost/mgmt/cm/firewall/working-config/address-lists/2aa5e56d-6430-3b7c-8ae5-1322bd87d158"
14      }
15    ]
16  },
17  "state": "enabled",
18  "ruidMaster": "00000000-0000-0000-0000-160b3996dd8b",
19  "ruidSeed": "-8071755514252078893",
20  "name": "API_Naughty_Rule_List",
21  "id": "61ded526-0c78-33f3-bf28-8228fc10dc73",
22  "generation": 1,
23  "lastUpdateMicros": 1531863799988423,
24  "kind": "cm:firewall:working-config:rule-lists:rules:rulestate",
25  "selfLink": "https://localhost/mgmt/cm/firewall/working-config/rule-lists/765f87e1-9b96-3142-8a63-95aa6c4232cf/rules/61ded526-0c78-33f3-bf28-8228fc10dc73"
26 }

```

7. Since this is an existing environment, we're going to first need to obtain the policy ID before we can assign the value to this variable. To obtain the policy ID of the existing policy we created in lab 1 and imported in the prior lab, run step 7.

```

1 {
2   "items": [
3     {
4       "rulesCollectionReference": {
5         "link": "https://localhost/mgmt/cm/firewall/working-config/policies/Fdfd450c-128f-33c0-a361-5b8c8bae9bd5/rules",
6         "isSubcollection": true
7       },
8       "partition": "Common",
9       "name": "Global",
10      "id": "Fdfd450c-128f-33c0-a361-5b8c8bae9bd5",
11      "generation": 1,
12      "lastUpdateMicros": 1531499362848442,
13      "kind": "cm:firewall:working-config:policies:polycystate",
14      "selfLink": "https://localhost/mgmt/cm/firewall/working-config/policies/Fdfd450c-128f-33c0-a361-5b8c8bae9bd5"
15    },
16    {
17      "rulesCollectionReference": {
18        "link": "https://localhost/mgmt/cm/firewall/working-config/policies/e3603d1e-bc2c-300b-8ac9-2a9a9d40983c/rules",
19        "isSubcollection": true
20      },
21      "partition": "Common",
22      "name": "rd_0_policy",
23      "id": "e3603d1e-bc2c-300b-8ac9-2a9a9d40983c",
24      "generation": 1,
25      "lastUpdateMicros": 1531499362847606,
26      "kind": "cm:firewall:working-config:policies:polycystate",
27      "selfLink": "https://localhost/mgmt/cm/firewall/working-config/policies/e3603d1e-bc2c-300b-8ac9-2a9a9d40983c"
28    }
29  ],
30  "generation": 1,
31  "kind": "cm:firewall:working-config:policies:polycollectionstate",
32  "lastUpdateMicros": 1528386998229533,
33  "selfLink": "https://localhost/mgmt/cm/firewall/working-config/policies"
34 }

```

8. You will notice there are two policies, Global and rd\_0\_policy, we'll need to copy the ID for the

rd\_0\_policy which is located directly under its name and paste it into the variable for AFM\_Policy\_ID.

MANAGE ENVIRONMENTS ✕

Edit Environment

Agility 2018

|                                     | Key               | Value                                | Bulk Edit |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------|--------------------------------------|-----------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | bigip01           | 192.168.1.100                        |           |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | bigip01-mgmt      | 192.168.1.50                         |           |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | AFM_Address_ID    | 2aa5e56d-6430-3b7c-8ae5-1322bd87d158 |           |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | AFM_Rule_ID       | 765f87e1-9b96-3142-8a63-95aa6c4232cf |           |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | AFM_Policy_ID     | e3603d1e-bc2c-300b-8ac9-2a9a9d40983c |           |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | bigip02-machineid |                                      |           |
|                                     | New key           | Value                                |           |

9. Finally run step 8 to add the new rule list to the existing policy, when completed you'll receive output similar as seen below.

```

Body Cookies Headers (10) Test Results Status: 200 OK Time: 528 ms Size: 1.01 KB
Pretty Raw Preview JSON
{
  "evalOrder": 0,
  "state": "enabled",
  "ruleListReference": {
    "id": "765f87e1-9b96-3142-8a63-95aa6c4232cf",
    "name": "API_Naughty_Rule_List",
    "kind": "cm:firewall:working-config:rule-lists:ruleliststate",
    "partition": "Common",
    "link": "https://localhost/mgmt/cm/firewall/working-config/rule-lists/765f87e1-9b96-3142-8a63-95aa6c4232cf"
  },
  "ruleMaster": "00000000-0000-0000-0000-160b297bb7d9",
  "ruleSeed": "-6449101041774298381",
  "name": "Reference_To_API_Naughty_Rule_List",
  "id": "08dfbbab-08e5-3f84-8055-d14f37a630cd",
  "generation": 1,
  "lastUpdatedMicros": 1531865050230663,
  "kind": "cm:firewall:working-config:policies:rules:rulestate",
  "selfLink": "https://localhost/mgmt/cm/firewall/working-config/policies/e3603d1e-bc2c-300b-8ac9-2a9a9d40983c/rules/08dfbbab-08e5-3f84-8055-d14f37a630cd"
}

```

10. Before we deploy the policy. Log into the BIG-IP web UI (<https://192.168.1.50>) and navigate to Configuration Security Network Security Firewall Policies. Click on the link for the rd\_0\_policy, expand all the rules to verify your new API created rule list is first in the list and all objects are created as expected.

| Id  | Name                               | Address       | Port | VLAN | Subscriber | Address   | Port  | Action            | Rule | Protocol |
|-----|------------------------------------|---------------|------|------|------------|-----------|-------|-------------------|------|----------|
| 1   | Reference_To_API_Naughty_Rule_List |               |      |      |            |           |       |                   |      |          |
| 1.1 | API_Naughty_Rule_List              | Address Lists | Any  | Any  | Any        | Any       | Any   | drop              |      | any      |
| 2   | Common_application_rule_list       |               |      |      |            |           |       |                   |      |          |
| 2.1 | allow_http                         | Any           | Any  | Any  | Any        | Addresses | Ports | accept-decisively |      | tcp      |
| 2.2 | allow_ssh                          | Addresses     | Any  | Any  | Any        | Addresses | Ports | accept-decisively |      | tcp      |
| 3   | Common_web_rule_list               |               |      |      |            |           |       |                   |      |          |
| 3.1 | allow_http                         | Any           | Any  | Any  | Any        | Addresses | Ports | accept-decisively |      | tcp      |
| 3.2 | allow_ssh                          | Addresses     | Any  | Any  | Any        | Addresses | Ports | accept-decisively |      | tcp      |
| 4   | reject_10_20_0_0                   | Addresses     | Any  | Any  | Any        | Any       | Any   | reject            |      | any      |

11. The final step is to deploy the policy to the BIG-IP. Before we can do this, we have one last variable we'll need to acquire, the machine ID of bigip02.dnslab.test. To obtain the machine ID run the call in step 9, once the call is run, you will look for the machineid key and copy the value to the environment

variable bigip02-machined as shown below and click update.

```
1- {
2-   "items": [
3-     {
4-       "firewallType": "vip",
5-       "firewallIpAddress": ":::0",
6-       "rulesCollectionReference": {
7-         "link": "https://localhost/mgmt/cm/firewall/working-config/firewalls/dccce9f5-8114-354c-ac5e-718d315a274f/rules",
8-         "isSubcollection": true
9-       },
10-      "partition": "Common",
11-      "deviceReference": {
12-        "id": "64682ec7-e206-4c1a-9746-bcb7add2b32b",
13-        "name": "bigip2.dnctest.lab",
14-        "kind": "sharedresolver:device-groups:restdeviceresolverdevicestate",
15-        "machineId": "64682ec7-e206-4c1a-9746-bcb7add2b32b",
16-        "link": "https://localhost/mgmt/shared/resolver/device-groups/cm-firewall-allfirewallDevices/devices/64682ec7-e206-4c1a-9746-bcb7add2b32b"
17-      },
18-      "device": "TRUE"
19-    }
20-  ]
21-}
```

machineID

< > All X

19 results

.

Aa

\b

MANAGE ENVIRONMENTS

X

Edit Environment

Agility 2018

|                                     | Key               | Value                                | Bulk Edit |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------|--------------------------------------|-----------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | bigip01           | 192.168.1.100                        |           |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | bigip01-mgmt      | 192.168.1.50                         |           |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | AFM_Address_ID    | 2aa5e56d-6430-3b7c-8ae5-1322bd87d158 |           |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | AFM_Rule_ID       | 765f87e1-9b96-3142-8a63-95aa6c4232cf |           |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | AFM_Policy_ID     | e3603d1e-bc2c-300b-8ac9-2a9a9d40983c |           |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | bigip02-machineid | 64682ec7-e206-4c1a-9746-bcb7add2b32b |           |
|                                     | New key           | Value                                |           |

12. Finally, you will run step 10, this will initiate a deployment on BIG-IQ to deploy the changes to BIG-IP. Within BIG-IQ navigate to Deployment Evaluate & Deploy Network Security. At the bottom in the deployments section you'll notice an API Policy Deploy task. Feel free to click on the task to investigate the changes. Once the policy has deployed, log into the web UI of bigip02.dnctest.lab and navigate to Security network Firewall Active Rules. Change the context to Route Domain and select 0. Expand all of the rules to verify the rules have been deployed as expected. Your final screen should look something like the screen capture below.

Security >> Network Firewall - Active Rules

Active Rules

Policies

Rule Lists

Address Lists

Port Lists

Schedules

IP Intelligence

Context Filter

Policy Type

Enforced

Context

Route Domain...

0

Filter Active Rules List

Add Rule List

Add Rule

| ID                                      | Name                  | State                 | Protocol | Source                    | Destination                            | Action            | Logging | Count | Latest Match              |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|----------|---------------------------|----------------------------------------|-------------------|---------|-------|---------------------------|
| Global with policy Global               |                       |                       |          |                           |                                        |                   |         |       |                           |
| 1                                       | Ping                  | Enabled               | ICMP     | Any                       | Any                                    | Accept-Decisively | Yes     | 3     | Jul 17 2018 15:02:24-0700 |
| Route Domain 0 with policy rdl_0_policy |                       |                       |          |                           |                                        |                   |         |       |                           |
| 1                                       | API_Naughty_Rule_List | Enabled               |          | Any                       |                                        |                   |         |       |                           |
|                                         | API_Naughty_Rule_List | Enabled               | Any      | Addresses                 | API_Naughty_Address_List               | Drop              | Yes     | 44    | Jul 17 2018 17:10:01-0700 |
| 2                                       | application_rule_list | Enabled               |          | Any                       |                                        |                   |         |       |                           |
|                                         | allow_http            | Enabled               | TCP      | Any                       | Addresses<br>10.40.0.50<br>Ports<br>80 | Accept-Decisively | Yes     | 0     | Never                     |
|                                         | allow_ssh             | Enabled               | TCP      | Addresses<br>10.20.0.200  | Addresses<br>10.40.0.50<br>Ports<br>22 | Accept-Decisively | Yes     | 0     | Never                     |
| 3                                       | web_rule_list         | Enabled               |          | Any                       |                                        |                   |         |       |                           |
|                                         | allow_http            | Enabled               | TCP      | Any                       | Addresses<br>10.30.0.50<br>Ports<br>80 | Accept-Decisively | Yes     | 1     | Jul 17 2018 15:02:33-0700 |
|                                         | allow_ssh             | Enabled<br>(conflict) | TCP      | Addresses<br>10.20.0.200  | Addresses<br>10.40.0.50<br>Ports<br>22 | Accept-Decisively | Yes     | 0     | Never                     |
| 4                                       | reject_10_20_0_0      | Enabled<br>(conflict) | Any      | Addresses<br>10.20.0.0/24 | Any                                    | Reject            | Yes     | 858   | Jul 17 2018 17:07:13-0700 |
| (Default)                               |                       | Enabled               | Any      | Any                       | Any                                    | Reject            | No      | 0     | Never                     |

Lastly, in your web browser, verify you can no longer access the web pages <http://10.30.0.50> and <http://10.40.0.50> as well as no longer being able to SSH to any of the devices.

Written for TMOS 13.1.0.1/BIG-IQ 6.0



IT agility. Your way.





## Advanced Multi-Layer Firewall Protection

Firewall 320 – Advanced Multi-Layer Firewall Protection

Participant Hands-on Lab Guide

Last Updated: January 2 2020

©2018 F5 Networks, Inc. All rights reserved. F5, F5 Networks, and the F5 logo are trademarks of F5 Networks, Inc. in the U.S. and in certain other countries. Other F5 trademarks are identified at f5.com.

Any other products, services, or company names referenced herein may be trademarks of their respective owners with no endorsement or affiliation, express or implied, claimed by F5.

Welcome to the F5 Agility 2018 Multilayer Firewall Implementations setup and hands-on exercise series.

The purpose of the Lab Setup and Configuration Guide is to walk you through the setup of F5 BIGIP to protect applications at multiple layers of the OSI stack hence providing Application Security Control. This in effect allows F5 BIG-IP to be multiple firewalls within a single platform.

**\*Assumptions/Prerequisites\*:** You have attended the AFM 101 lab sessions either this year or in previous years. Additionally this lab guide assumes that you understand LTM/TMOS basics and are comfortable with the process of creating Nodes, Pools, Virtual Servers, Profiles and Setting up logging and reporting.

There are three modules detailed in this document.

**Module 1: F5 Multi-layer Firewall**

**Module 2: F5 Dynamic Firewall Rules With iRules LX**

**Module 3: AFM Protocol Inspection IPS**

### Lab Requirements:

- Remote Desktop Protocol (RDP) client utility
  - Windows: Built-in
  - Mac (Microsoft Client): <https://itunes.apple.com/us/app/microsoft-remote-desktop/id715768417?mt=12>
  - Mac (Open Source Client): [http://sourceforge.net/projects/cord/files/cord/0.5.7/CoRD\\_0.5.7.zip/download](http://sourceforge.net/projects/cord/files/cord/0.5.7/CoRD_0.5.7.zip/download)
  - Unix/Linux (Source – Requires Compiling): <http://www.rdesktop.org/>

---

**Note:** You may use your webbrowser for console access if necessary but screen sizing may be affected.

---

---

**Note:** IP Filtering locks down connectivity to the remote labs. If you are required to VPN into your corporate office to get Internet access, please determine your external IP address via <https://www.whatismyip.com> and provide an instructor with that information for your pod.

---

- Connectivity to the facility provided Internet service
- Unique destination IP address for RDP to your lab

## 2.1 Module 1: F5 Multi-layer Firewall

This module has seven labs in configuring an Advanced Multi-layer firewall applicable to many data center environments.

In this module, you will build a perimeter firewall with advanced Layer 7 security mitigations.

Estimated completion time: 1 hour

Objective:

- Inspect multiple internal pools and virtual servers for different applications within your data center. e.g. www, API, /downloads
- Inspect external hosted virtual server that allows the same IP address to be shared with multiple SSL enabled applications.
- Inspect and understand LTM policy to direct traffic to appropriate virtual server
- Configure local logging; test
- Create a network firewall policy to protect the internal application virtual servers; test
- Configure the external virtual server to transform traffic coming through CDN networks so that firewall policies can be applied to specific clients; test
- Modify the network firewall policy to block based on XFF; test
- Apply Layer 7 responses (403 Denied) for CDN clients to firewall drop rules
- Configure HTTP protocol security; test
- Configure SSL Visibility to external security devices e.g. IDS; test

Labs 1 & 2 highlight the flexibility of leveraging an application proxy such as the BIG-IP for your perimeter security utilizing common traffic management techniques and some additional features unique to the BIG-IP as an Application Delivery Controller.

Labs 3 & 4 Breaks out applying differing security policies to the multi-tiered application deployment.

Lab 5 Highlights the flexibility of the Multi-Layered Firewall to solve common problems for hosting providers.

Lab 6 Applies Layer 7 protocol validation and security for HTTP to the existing applications.

Lab 7 Provides a solution for sending decrypted traffic to other security devices.

**Warning:** IP addresses in screenshots are examples only. Please read the step-by-step lab instructions to ensure that you use the correct IP addresses.

### 2.1.1 Lab 1: Pre-configured pools and virtual servers

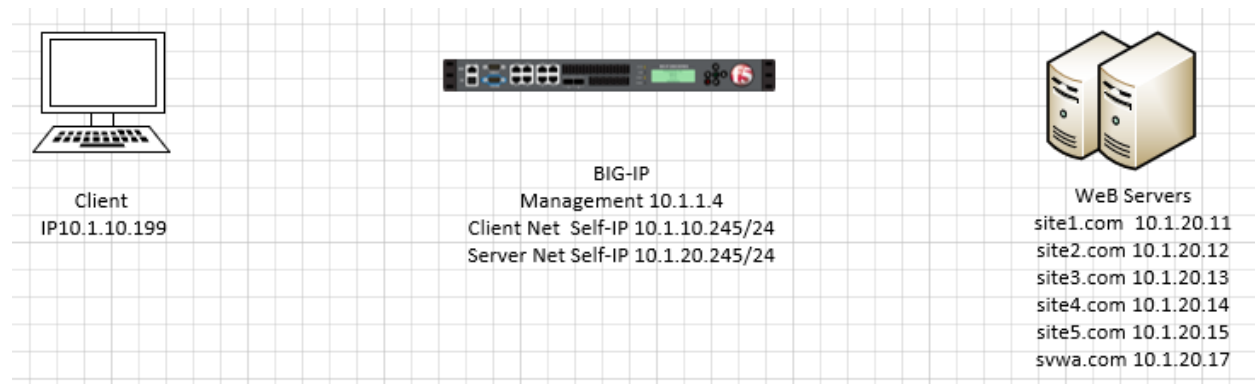
A virtual server is used by BIG-IP to identify specific types of traffic. Other objects such as profiles, policies, pools and iRules are applied to the virtual server to add features and functionality. In the context of security, since BIG-IP is a default-deny device, a virtual server is necessary to accept specific types of traffic.

The pool is a logical group of hosts that is applied to and will receive traffic from a virtual server.

On your personal device

Look at the supplemental login instructions for:

- External Hostnames
- External IP addressing diagram
- Login IDs and Passwords are subject to change as well.



**Note:** Use the Chrome Browser to Connect to BIG-IP01— <https://10.1.1.4> Credentials are displayed in the login screen

#### Inspect Application Pools

On BIG-IP

Verify the following pools using the following table of pool information.

**Navigation:** Local Traffic > Pools > Pool List

| Name               | Health Monitor | Members    | Service Port |
|--------------------|----------------|------------|--------------|
| pool_www.site1.com | thttp          | 10.1.20.11 | 80           |
| pool_www.site2.com | http           | 10.1.20.12 | 80           |
| pool_www.site3.com | http           | 10.1.20.13 | 80           |
| pool_www.site4.com | http           | 10.1.20.14 | 80           |
| pool_www.site5.com | http           | 10.1.20.15 | 80           |
| pool_www.dvwa.com  | tcp_half_open  | 10.1.20.17 | 80           |

Local Traffic >> Pools : Pool List

Pool List Statistics

Search Create...

| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Status | Name           | Description | Application | Members | Partition / Path |
|-------------------------------------|--------|----------------|-------------|-------------|---------|------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/>            |        | IDS_Pool       |             |             | 1       | Common           |
| <input type="checkbox"/>            |        | pool_dvwa.com  |             |             | 1       | Common           |
| <input type="checkbox"/>            |        | pool_ext_ssh   |             |             | 1       | Common           |
| <input type="checkbox"/>            |        | pool_site1.com |             |             | 1       | Common           |
| <input type="checkbox"/>            |        | pool_site2.com |             |             | 1       | Common           |
| <input type="checkbox"/>            |        | pool_site3.com |             |             | 1       | Common           |
| <input type="checkbox"/>            |        | pool_site4.com |             |             | 1       | Common           |
| <input type="checkbox"/>            |        | pool_site5.com |             |             | 1       | Common           |

Delete...

## Inspect Application Virtual Servers

By using the term 'internal' we are creating the virtual servers on what is essentially a loopback VLAN which prevents them from being exposed. The EXT\_VIP in this exercise is used to forward traffic with specific characteristics to the internal VIP's. This is accomplished by assigning a traffic policy to the VIP. The traffic policy is described and inspected in the next section. For this class, the Wildcard Virtual servers (Blue Square status indicator) are not used.

**Navigation:** Local Traffic > Virtual Servers > Virtual Server List

Local Traffic >> Virtual Servers : Virtual Server List

Virtual Server List Virtual Address List Statistics


Search Create...

| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Status | Name                          | Description | Application | Destination | Service Port | Type                  | Resources | Partition / Path |
|-------------------------------------|--------|-------------------------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|--------------|-----------------------|-----------|------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/>            |        | EXT_SSH_10_1_10_30            |             |             | 10.1.10.30  | 22 (SSH)     | Performance (Layer 4) | Edit...   | Common           |
| <input type="checkbox"/>            |        | EXT_VIP_10_1_10_30            |             |             | 10.1.10.30  | 0 (Any)      | Standard              | Edit...   | Common           |
| <input type="checkbox"/>            |        | IPv4_ANY                      |             |             | Any IPv4    | 0 (Any)      | Forwarding (IP)       | Edit...   | Common           |
| <input type="checkbox"/>            |        | IPv4_TCP                      |             |             | Any IPv4    | 0 (Any)      | Forwarding (IP)       | Edit...   | Common           |
| <input type="checkbox"/>            |        | IPv4_UDP                      |             |             | Any IPv4    | 0 (Any)      | Forwarding (IP)       | Edit...   | Common           |
| <input type="checkbox"/>            |        | IPv6_ANY                      |             |             | Any IPv6    | 0 (Any)      | Forwarding (IP)       | Edit...   | Common           |
| <input type="checkbox"/>            |        | IPv6_TCP                      |             |             | Any IPv6    | 0 (Any)      | Forwarding (IP)       | Edit...   | Common           |
| <input type="checkbox"/>            |        | IPv6_UDP                      |             |             | Any IPv6    | 0 (Any)      | Forwarding (IP)       | Edit...   | Common           |
| <input type="checkbox"/>            |        | int_vip_www.dvwa.com_6.6.6.17 |             |             | 6.6.6.17    | 80 (HTTP)    | Standard              | Edit...   | Common           |
| <input type="checkbox"/>            |        | int_vip_www.site1.com_1.1.1.1 |             |             | 1.1.1.1     | 80 (HTTP)    | Standard              | Edit...   | Common           |
| <input type="checkbox"/>            |        | int_vip_www.site2.com_2.2.2.2 |             |             | 2.2.2.2     | 80 (HTTP)    | Standard              | Edit...   | Common           |
| <input type="checkbox"/>            |        | int_vip_www.site3.com_3.3.3.3 |             |             | 3.3.3.3     | 80 (HTTP)    | Standard              | Edit...   | Common           |
| <input type="checkbox"/>            |        | int_vip_www.site4.com_4.4.4.4 |             |             | 4.4.4.4     | 80 (HTTP)    | Standard              | Edit...   | Common           |
| <input type="checkbox"/>            |        | int_vip_www.site5.com_5.5.5.5 |             |             | 5.5.5.5     | 80 (HTTP)    | Standard              | Edit...   | Common           |

Enable Disable Delete...

Inspect the Local Traffic Network Map

**Navigation:** Local Traffic > Network Map


bigip01.f5demo.com - Online (Active)  
Feb 7, 2020 8:33 AM (PST)

Partition: Common ▾ Sort by: Status ▾ Filter:  [ADVANCED FILTER](#)

?

Last Update: Feb 7, 2020 8:32 AM (PST)

Loading...

Common

|                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IPV4_ANY<br>0.0.0.0                                                                                                | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IPV4_TCP<br>0.0.0.0                                                                                                | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IPV4_UDP<br>0.0.0.0                                                                                                | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IPV6_ANY<br>::0                                                                                                                             |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IPV6_TCP<br>::0                                                                                                    | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IPV6_UDP<br>::0                                                                                                    | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> EXT_SSH_10_1_10_30<br>10.1.10.30:22<br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> pool_ext_ssh<br>10.1.20.11:22           | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> EXT_VIP_10_1_10_30<br>10.1.10.30:0<br><input type="radio"/> XFF-SNAT<br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> pool_site1.com<br>10.1.20.11:80 |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> int_vip_www.dvwa.com_6.6.6.17<br>6.6.6.17:80<br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> pool_dvwa.com<br>10.1.20.17:80 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> int_vip_www.site1.com_1.1.1.1<br>1.1.1.1:80<br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> pool_site1.com<br>10.1.20.11:80 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> int_vip_www.site2.com_2.2.2.2<br>2.2.2.2:80<br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> pool_site2.com<br>10.1.20.12:80 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> int_vip_www.site3.com_3.3.3.3<br>3.3.3.3:80<br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> pool_site3.com<br>10.1.20.13:80                          |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> int_vip_www.site4.com_4.4.4.4<br>4.4.4.4:80<br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> pool_site4.com<br>10.1.20.14:80 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> int_vip_www.site5.com_5.5.5.5<br>5.5.5.5:80<br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> pool_site5.com<br>10.1.20.15:80 |                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                 |

**Note:** The virtual servers should show a green circle for status.

**Note:** This completes Module 1 - Lab 1

## 2.1.2 Lab 2: Leverage LTM Policies To Direct SSL Terminated Applications To Secondary Virtual Servers

What is SNI? Introduced in TLS 1.0 as a TLS extension, Server Name Indication (SNI) allows the client to send the hostname they are trying to connect to in the SSL handshake. This allows the Application Delivery Controllers (ADC) such as the BIG-IP and the Application servers to identify the appropriate application the client is trying to connect to. From this information, the ADC can respond with the proper SSL certificate to the client allowing the ADC to provide SSL enabled services for multiple applications from a single IP address.

LTM policies are another way to programmatically modify traffic as it is flowing through the data plane of the BIG-IP. This functionality can also be accomplished with F5 iRules. The advantage this has over iRules is

that LTM policies can be modified and appended to the existing configuration without replacing the entire application configuration. This lends itself to being updated through the CLI or via the REST API easily.

If you make a single change to an iRule, the entire iRule needs to be re-uploaded and applied.

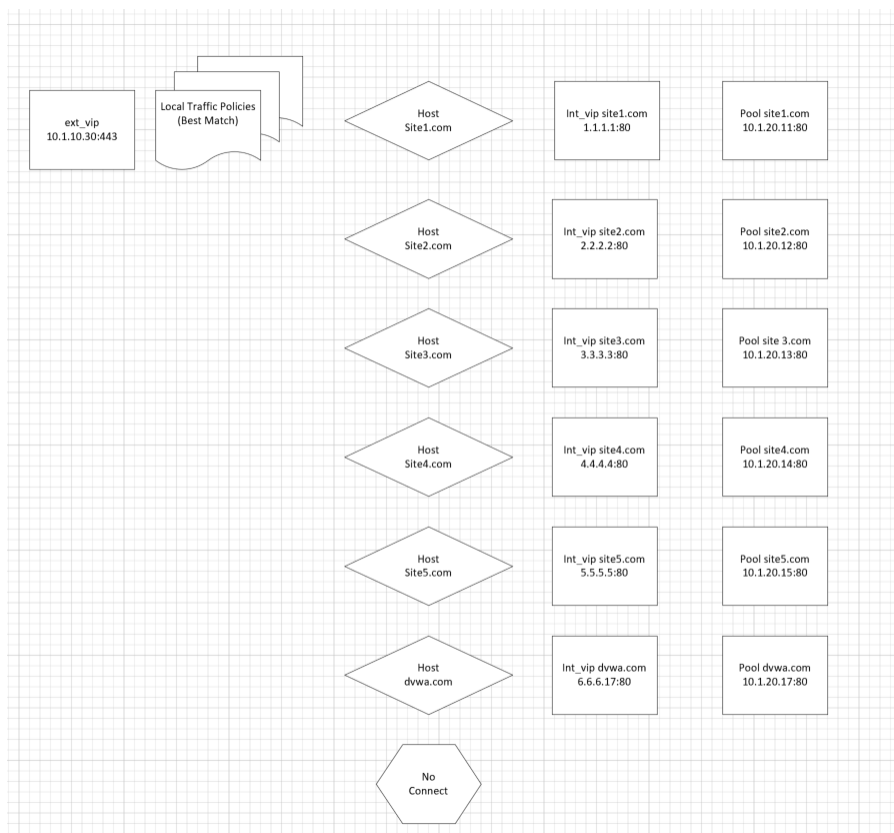
The LTM policy is what directs application traffic to flow from the external virtual server to the internal virtual servers based on the Layer 7 request. In this case, since we are using SNI to terminate multiple applications (mysite,yoursite,theirsite, api, downloads) we need to be able to direct that traffic to the appropriate application pools. Some can even come back to the same application pool.

Whether it is based on the hostname or the URI path, the request can be forwarded to a different virtual server or an application pool of servers.

### Inspect the LTM Policies

Take a few minutes to open the draft policy and review the options. Policy is a very flexible tool to direct traffic based on the packet content. In this use case we distribute traffic to a subset of internal VIP's, Policy can be configured to forward traffic directly to pools or nodes based on the packet content and many other attributes

**Note:** As shown in this diagram, there is an external VIP and internal VIPs. The external VIP has the local traffic policies on it.



**Navigation:** Local Traffic > Policies : Policy List

**Navigation:** Select HTTPS\_Virtual\_Targeting\_Policy\_L7V3 from the published policies

Local Traffic » Policies : Policy List » HTTPS\_Virtual\_Targeting\_Policy\_L7V3

Published Policy

General Properties

|                  |                                                                                                                    |
|------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Policy Name      | HTTPS_Virtual_Targeting_Policy_L7V3                                                                                |
| Partition / Path | Common                                                                                                             |
| Description      |                                                                                                                    |
| Strategy         | Execute <input type="text" value="best"/> matching rule using the <input type="text" value="best-match"/> strategy |
| Type             | Traffic Policy                                                                                                     |

Cancel Create Draft Clone

Rules

| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | ID | Name                          | Description | Conditions                                     | Actions                                                                                    |
|-------------------------------------|----|-------------------------------|-------------|------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/>            | 1  | <a href="#">www.site1.com</a> |             | HTTP Host host is 'site1.com' at request time. | Forward traffic to virtual server '/Common/int_vip_www.site1.com_1.1.1.1' at request time. |
| <input type="checkbox"/>            | 2  | <a href="#">www.site2.com</a> |             | HTTP Host host is 'site2.com' at request time. | Forward traffic to virtual server '/Common/int_vip_www.site2.com_2.2.2.2' at request time. |
| <input type="checkbox"/>            | 3  | <a href="#">www.site3.com</a> |             | HTTP Host host is 'site3.com' at request time. | Forward traffic to virtual server '/Common/int_vip_www.site3.com_3.3.3.3' at request time. |
| <input type="checkbox"/>            | 4  | <a href="#">www.site4.com</a> |             | HTTP Host host is 'site4.com' at request time. | Forward traffic to virtual server '/Common/int_vip_www.site4.com_4.4.4.4' at request time. |
| <input type="checkbox"/>            | 5  | <a href="#">www.site5.com</a> |             | HTTP Host host is 'site5.com' at request time. | Forward traffic to virtual server '/Common/int_vip_www.site5.com_5.5.5.5' at request time. |
| <input type="checkbox"/>            | 6  | <a href="#">www.dvwa.com</a>  |             | HTTP Host host is 'dvwa.com' at request time.  | Forward traffic to virtual server '/Common/int_vip_www.dvwa.com_6.6.6.17' at request time. |

### Verify that the Policy is assigned To The External Virtual Server

**Navigation:** Local Traffic > Virtual Servers : Virtual Server List

**Navigation:** Click the EXT\_VIP\_10\_1\_10\_30

**Navigation:** Click the Resources Tab

Local Traffic » Virtual Servers : Virtual Server List » EXT\_VIP\_10\_1\_10\_30

Properties
 Resources
 Security
 Statistics

Load Balancing

|                              |                  |
|------------------------------|------------------|
| Default Pool                 | pool_site1.com ▼ |
| Default Persistence Profile  | None ▼           |
| Fallback Persistence Profile | None ▼           |

Update

iRules

| Name             |
|------------------|
| /Common/XFF-SNAT |

Policies

| Name                                        |
|---------------------------------------------|
| /Common/HTTPS_Virtual_Targeting_Policy_L7V3 |

**Note:** there is a policy and an iRule is assigned to the VIP:

### Create An ACL to allow web traffic and SSH

The rules created in this section allow basic connectivity to the resources. We will add enforcement rules at the Virtual server level to demonstrate functionality

On bigip01.f5demo.com (10.1.1.4) create a rule list to allow traffic. A logical container will be created before the individual rules can be added. You will create a list with rules to allow port 80 (HTTP), 443 (HTTPS), and 22 (SSH) to servers 10.1.20.11 through 10.1.20.17 We will also create a rules which allows HTTPS and SSH traffic to access 10.1.10.30

Create a container for the rules by going to:

**Navigation:** Security > Network Firewall > Rule Lists

**Navigation:** select Create

For the **Name** enter **web\_rule\_list**, provide an optional description

**Navigation** click **Finished**



Security » Network Firewall : Rule Lists » New Rule List...

General Properties

|             |               |
|-------------|---------------|
| Name        | web_rule_list |
| Description |               |

Cancel Repeat Finished

Security » Network Firewall : Rule Lists

⚙️ Active Rules Policies Rule Lists Schedules IP Intelligence ▼

• Search

| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ▲ Name          |
|-----------------------------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> _sys_self_allow_all        |
| <input type="checkbox"/> _sys_self_allow_defaults   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> _sys_self_allow_management |
| <input type="checkbox"/> geo_restrict_rule_list     |
| <input type="checkbox"/> web_rule_list              |

Delete...

**Navigation** Select the **web\_rule\_list** by clicking on it in the Rule Lists table

**Navigation** click the **Add** button in the Rules section.

Add a rules into the list to allow HTTP, HTTPS, and SSH traffic as described in the next steps

Security » Network Firewall : Rule Lists » **web\_rule\_list**

⚙ Properties

General Properties

|                  |                      |
|------------------|----------------------|
| Name             | web_rule_list        |
| Partition / Path | Common               |
| Description      | <input type="text"/> |

Update Delete

\*  Search

| Source                              |      |      |             |       |          |                |      |            |               | Destination |                |      |      |          |                |       |        |         |                |
|-------------------------------------|------|------|-------------|-------|----------|----------------|------|------------|---------------|-------------|----------------|------|------|----------|----------------|-------|--------|---------|----------------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Name | UUID | Description | State | Schedule | Address/Region | Port | Subscriber | VLAN / Tunnel | Zone        | Address/Region | Port | Zone | Protocol | Virtual Server | iRule | Action | Logging | Service Policy |
| No records to display.              |      |      |             |       |          |                |      |            |               |             |                |      |      |          |                |       |        |         |                |

Remove

Reorder Add

|                            |                                                                                             |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Name</b>                | allow_http_and_https                                                                        |
| <b>Protocol</b>            | TCP                                                                                         |
| <b>Source</b>              | Leave at Default of <b>Any</b>                                                              |
| <b>Destination Address</b> | <b>Specify Address Range</b> 10.1.20.11 to 10.1.20.17, then click <b>Add</b>                |
| <b>Destination Port</b>    | <b>Specify...</b> Port 80, then click <b>Add Specify...</b> Port 443, then click <b>Add</b> |
| <b>Action</b>              | <b>Accept</b>                                                                               |
| <b>Logging</b>             | Enabled                                                                                     |

**Navigation:** Click Repeat

Add a rule into the list to allow HTTPS to Virtual Server 10\_1\_10\_30.

**Navigation:** Click **Finished**

Security » Network Firewall: Rule Lists » **web\_rule\_list**

 Properties

**General Properties**

|                |                      |
|----------------|----------------------|
| Name           | web_rule_list        |
| Partition/Path | Common               |
| Description    | <input type="text"/> |

Update Delete

+  Search

|                                                                                                          |      |             |         |          | Source         |      |            |             | Destination |                       |      |      | Reorder Add |                |       |        |         |                |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|-------------|---------|----------|----------------|------|------------|-------------|-------------|-----------------------|------|------|-------------|----------------|-------|--------|---------|----------------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Name                                                                 | UUID | Description | State   | Schedule | Address/Region | Port | Subscriber | VLAN/Tunnel | Zone        | Address/Region        | Port | Zone | Protocol    | Virtual Server | iRule | Action | Logging | Service Policy |
|  allow_http_and_https |      |             | Enabled |          | Any            | Any  | Any        | Any         | Any         | 10.1.20.11-10.1.20.17 | 80   | Any  | 6 (TCP)     |                |       | Accept | Enabled |                |
|  allow_any_10_1_10_30 |      |             | Enabled |          | Any            | Any  | Any        | Any         | Any         | 10.1.10.30            |      | Any  | Any         | 6 (TCP)        |       | Accept | Enabled |                |

Remove

**Navigation:** Click Finished

### Assign the Rule List to a Policy

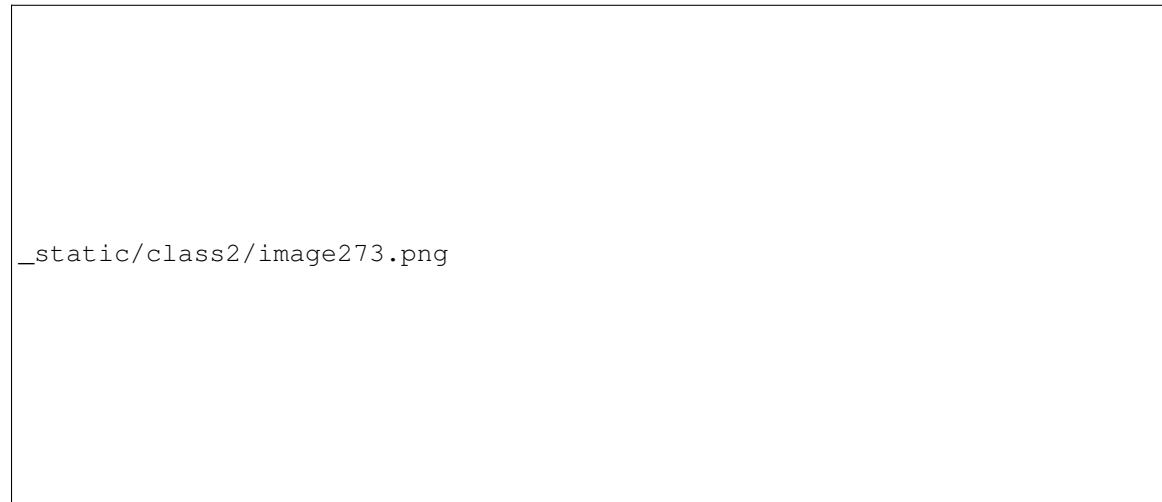
**Navigation:** Security > Network Firewall > Policies

**Navigation** Click Create

For the **Name** enter **rd\_0\_policy**, provide an optional description

**Navigation** click **Finished**.

(Note: We commonly use “RD” in our rules to help reference the “Route Domain”, default is 0)\*\*



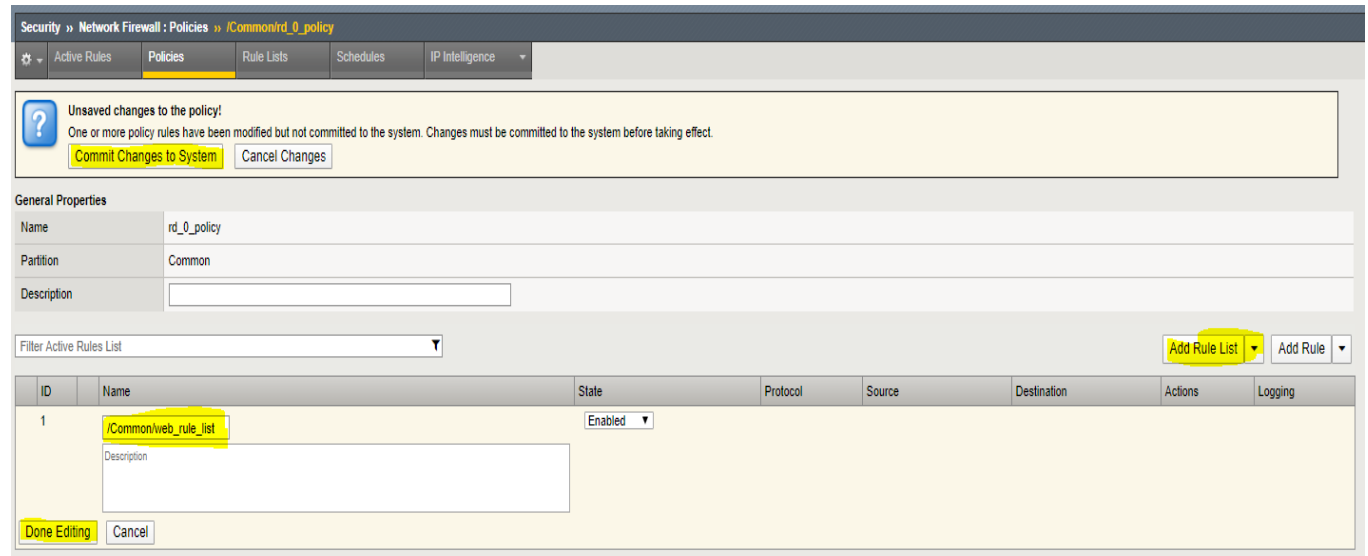
**Navigation** Edit the **rd\_0\_policy** by clicking on it in the Policy Lists table,

**Navigation** click the **Add Rule List** button.

**Navigation** For the **Name**, start typing **web\_rule\_list**, you will notice the name will auto complete,

**Navigation** select the rule list **/Common/web\_rule\_list**, provide an optional description

**Navigation** click **Done Editing**.



You will notice the changes are unsaved and need to be committed to the system. This is a nice feature to have enabled to verify you want to commit the changes you’ve just made without a change automatically being implemented.

**Navigation** click “**Commit Changes to System**”

### Assign the **rd\_0\_policy** to Route Domain 0

**Navigation:** Network > Route Domains

**Navigation:** Click on the “0” to select Route Domain 0

**Navigation:** Select the Security Tab

Set **Enforcement** to **Enable** and select the **rd\_0\_policy**

**Navigation** Click Update

Network » Route Domains » 0

⚙️ Properties Security

Policy Settings: Basic ▼

|                             |                                                                        |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Route Domain ID             | 0                                                                      |
| VLANs                       | external, http-tunnel, internal, socks-tunnel                          |
| Network Firewall            | Enforcement: Enabled... ▼ Policy: rd_0_policy ▼<br>Staging: Disabled ▼ |
| Network Address Translation | None ▼                                                                 |
| Packet Filter               | None ▼                                                                 |
| IP Intelligence             | None ▼                                                                 |
| Maximum Bandwidth           | Infinite ▼                                                             |
| Service Policy              | None ▼                                                                 |
| Eviction Policy             | None ▼                                                                 |

Update

## Configure BIG-IP Firewall in ADC Mode

By default, AFM firewall is configured in ADC mode, which is a default allow configuration. In Firewall mode, all traffic is blocked at the firewall, and any traffic you want to allow must be explicitly specified.

In deployments where there are a large number of VIP's, deploying in Firewall mode would require significant preparation. Firewall functionality is easier to introduce in ADC mode.

**Navigation:** Security > Options > Network Firewall

Virtual Server & Self IP Contexts Accept

**Navigation** Click **\*\*Update\***

**|image251|**

Open the Firewall Options tab

## Validate Lab 2 Configuration

**Note:** Open a tab on the Chrome Browser to test access to the URL's below

**Validation:** This lab is using self-signed certificates. You can either open a web browser on the test client or run CURL from the CLI to validate your configuration.

**You will need to accept the certificate to proceed to the application sites**

```
URL: https://site1.com

URL: https://site2.com

URL: https://site3.com

URL: https://site4.com

URL: https://site5.com

URL: https://dvwa.com      Username:  admin      Password: password
```

**With curl you need to use the -k option to ignore certificate validation**

**Note:** From a terminal window (use Cygwin on Win7 Client Desktop). Curl will let us do some of the additional testing in later sections. If you scroll up to the text immediately following the command you will see the IP address of the pool member you connected to.

---

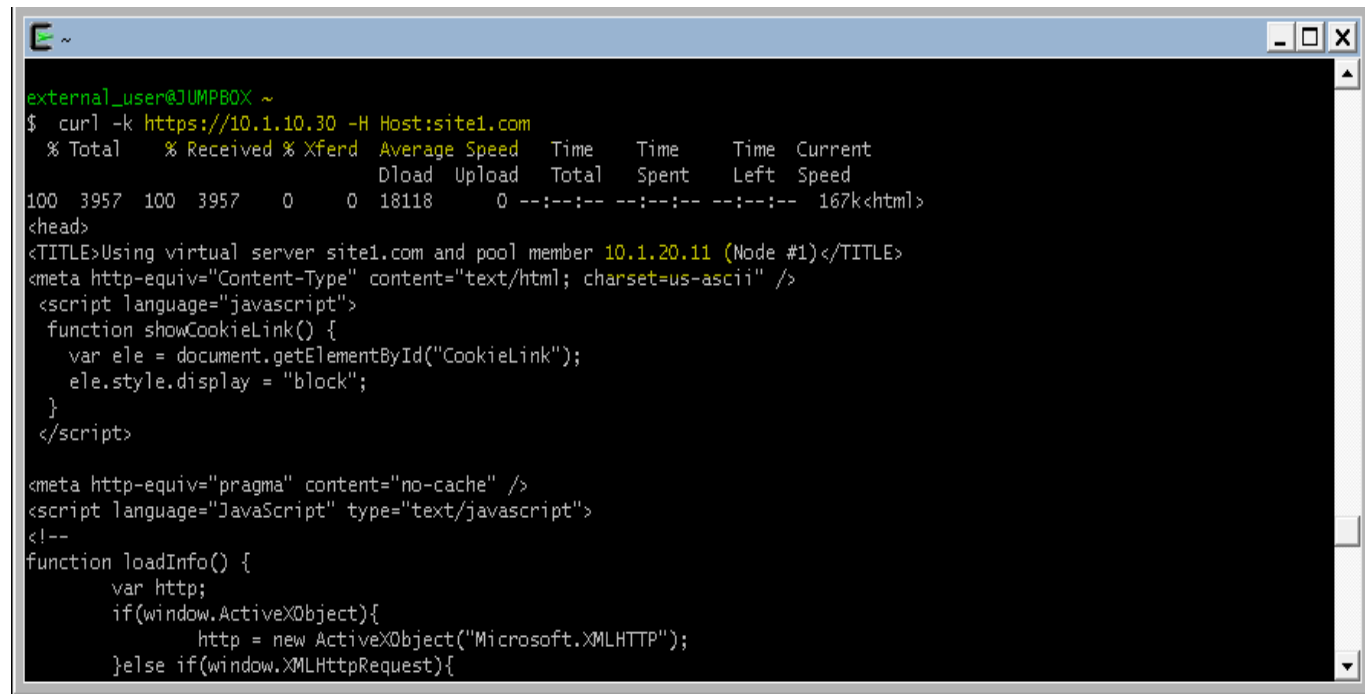
```
curl -k https://10.1.10.30 -H Host:site1.com

curl -k https://10.1.10.30 -H Host:site2.com

curl -k https://10.1.10.30 -H Host:site3.com

curl -k https://10.1.10.30 -H Host:site4.com

curl -k https://10.1.10.30 -H Host:site5.com
```



```
external_user@JUMPBOX ~
$ curl -k https://10.1.10.30 -H Host:site1.com
  % Total    % Received % Xferd  Average Speed   Time    Time     Time  Current
                                 Dload  Upload   Total   Spent    Left  Speed
100 3957  100 3957    0     0 18118      0 --:--:-- --:--:-- --:--:-- 167k<html>
<head>
<TITLE>Using virtual server site1.com and pool member 10.1.20.11 (Node #1)</TITLE>
<meta http-equiv="Content-Type" content="text/html; charset=us-ascii" />
<script language="javascript">
  function showCookieLink() {
    var ele = document.getElementById("CookieLink");
    ele.style.display = "block";
  }
</script>

<meta http-equiv="pragma" content="no-cache" />
<script language="JavaScript" type="text/javascript">
<!--
function loadInfo() {
  var http;
  if(window.ActiveXObject){
    http = new ActiveXObject("Microsoft.XMLHTTP");
  }else if(window.XMLHttpRequest){
```

**Note:** for site 1 connected to 10.1.20.11, site 2 10.1.20.12 etc:

---

**Note:** This completes Module 1 - Lab 2:

### 2.1.3 Lab 3: Configure Local Logging For Firewall Events

Security logging needs to be configured separately from LTM logging.

High Speed Logging for modules such as the firewall module requires three components.

- A Log Publisher
- A Log Destination (local-db for this lab)
- A Log Profile

For more detailed information on logging please consult the BIG-IP documentation.

[https://askf5.f5.com/kb/en-us/products/big-ip\\_ltm/manuals/product/bigip-external-monitoring-implementations-13-0-0/3.html](https://askf5.f5.com/kb/en-us/products/big-ip_ltm/manuals/product/bigip-external-monitoring-implementations-13-0-0/3.html)

In this lab, we will configure a local log publisher and log profile. The log profile will then be applied to the virtual server and tested.

#### Create A Log Publisher

This will send the firewall logs to a local database

Create the log publisher using the following information:

**Navigation:** System > Logs > Configuration > Log Publishers, then click Create

<b>Name</b>	firewall_log_publisher
<b>Destinations (Selected)</b>	local-db

**System » Logs : Configuration : Log Publishers**

**General Properties**

Name	firewall_log_publisher
Description	

**Log Destinations**

Destinations	<div>Selected</div> <div> / Common  local-db </div>	<div>Available</div> <div> / Common  alertd  local-syslog </div>
	<< >>	

Cancel Repeat Finished

**Note:** Leave all other fields using the default values.

**Navigation:** Click Finished

### Create A Log Profile

Create the log profile using the following information:

**Navigation:** Security > Event Logs > Logging Profiles, then click Create

<b>Name</b>	firewall_log_profile
<b>Protocol Security</b>	Checked
<b>Network Firewall</b>	Checked

### Modify The Log Profile To Collect Protocol Security Events

Edit log profile protocol security tab using the following information:

**Navigation:** Click on the Protocol Security tab and select the firewall\_log\_publisher

firewall\_log\_publisher

Security » Event Logs : Logging Profiles » Create New Logging Profile...

Logging Profile Properties Cancel Finished

Profile Name	firewall_log_profile
Protocol Security	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Network Firewall	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
DoS Protection	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled

Protocol Security Network Firewall

HTTP, FTP, and SMTP Security

Publisher	firewall_log_publisher ▼
-----------	--------------------------

**Note:** Leave all other fields using the default values.

### Modify The Log Profile To Collect Firewall Security Events

Edit log profile network firewall tab using the following information:

**Navigation:** Click on the Network Firewall tab



<b>Network Firewall Publisher</b>	firewall_log_profile
<b>Log Rule Matches</b>	Check Accept Check Drop Check Reject
<b>Log IP Errors</b>	Checked
<b>Log TCP Errors</b>	Checked
<b>Log TCP Events</b>	Checked
<b>Log Translation Fields</b>	Checked
<b>Storage Format</b>	Field-List (Move all to Selected Items)

Security » Event Logs : Logging Profiles » Create New Logging Profile...

Logging Profile Properties Cancel Finished

Profile Name: firewall\_log\_profile

Protocol Security: ☒ Enabled

Network Firewall: ☒ Enabled

DoS Protection: ☐ Enabled

Protocol Security: **Network Firewall**

**Network Firewall**

Publisher: firewall\_log\_publisher

Aggregate Rate Limit: Indefinite

Log Rule Matches: ☒ Accept Rate Limit: Indefinite

☒ Drop Rate Limit: Indefinite

☒ Reject Rate Limit: Indefinite

Log IP Errors: ☒ Enabled Rate Limit: Indefinite

Log TCP Errors: ☒ Enabled Rate Limit: Indefinite

Log TCP Events: ☒ Enabled Rate Limit: Indefinite

Log Translation Fields: ☒ Enabled

Always Log Region: ☐ Enabled

Storage Format: Field-List Delimiter: ,

Selected Items:

- action
- acl\_policy\_name
- acl\_policy\_type
- acl\_rule\_name
- bigip\_hostname
- context\_name
- context\_type
- date\_time
- dest\_geo
- dest\_ip

Available Items:

Up Down

**Note:** Leave all other fields using the default values.

**Navigation:** Click Create

### Apply The Logging Configuration

Apply the newly created log profile to the external virtual server created in the previous lab.

**Navigation:** Local Traffic > Virtual Servers > Virtual Server List

**Navigation:** Click on EXT\_VIP\_10.1.10.30

**Navigation:** Security tab > Policies

**Log Profile** | firewall\_log\_profile

**Local Traffic » Virtual Servers : Virtual Server List » EXT\_VIP\_10.10.99.30**

⚙️ Properties Resources **Security** Statistics

**Policy Settings:** Basic

Destination	10.10.99.30:443
Service	HTTPS
Application Security Policy	Disabled
Protocol Security	Disabled
Network Firewall	Enforcement: Disabled Staging: Disabled
Network Address Translation	<input type="checkbox"/> Use Device Policy <input type="checkbox"/> Use Route Domain Policy Policy: None
Service Policy	None
IP Intelligence	Disabled
DoS Protection Profile	Disabled
Anti-Fraud Profile	Disabled
Log Profile	Enabled... <div> <div>Selected</div> <div>Available</div> </div> <div> <div>/Common firewall_log_profile</div> <div>           Log all requests            Log illegal requests            global-network            local-dos         </div> </div>

Update

---

\* Search

Policy Type: Enforced

						Source			Destination						
✓	Name	☰	Rule List	Description	State	Schedule	Address/Region	Port	VLAN / Tunnel	Address/Region	Port	Protocol	iRule	Action	Logging
	(Default)				Enabled		Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any		Accept	

Delete... Search Logs... Reset Count

**Note:** Leave all other fields using the default values.

**Navigation:** Click Update

View network firewall logs.

**Navigation:** Security > Event Logs > Network > Firewall

Security » Event Logs : Network : Firewall

Protocol

Network

DoS

Logging Profiles

<

## Validate Lab 3 Configuration

Open a new web browser tab and access the virtual server or repeat the curl statements from the previous sections.

URL: <https://site1.com>

**Note:** This test generates traffic that creates network firewall log entries.

**Navigation:** Security > Event Logs > Network > Firewall

Security » Event Logs : Network : Firewall

Application

Protocol

Network

Network Address Translation

DoS

Logging Profiles

Last 2 Hours

Search

Custom Search...

Source

Destination

Time

Context

Name

Policy Type

Policy Name

Rule

User

Region

FQDN

Address

Port

VLAN / Tunnel

Region

FQDN

Address

Port

2016-07-17 18:12:39

Virtual Server

/Common/EXT\_VIP\_10.10.99.30

-

No-lookup

10.10.99.222

49528

/Common/outside

No-lookup

10.10.99.30

443

10.10.99.222

49528

\_loopback

1.1.1.1

80

2016-07-17 18:09:21

Virtual Server

/Common/EXT\_VIP\_10.10.99.30

-

No-lookup

10.10.99.222

49478

/Common/outside

No-lookup

10.10.99.30

443

10.10.99.222

49478

\_loopback

1.1.1.1

80

2016-07-17 18:08:32

Virtual Server

/Common/EXT\_VIP\_10.10.99.30

-

No-lookup

10.10.99.10

56453

/Common/outside

No-lookup

10.10.99.30

443

10.10.99.10

56453

\_loopback

1.1.1.2

80

2016-07-17 18:08:32

Virtual Server

/Common/EXT\_VIP\_10.10.99.30

-

No-lookup

10.10.99.10

56453

/Common/outside

No-lookup

10.10.99.30

443

10.10.99.10

56453

\_loopback

1.1.1.2

80

2016-07-17 18:07:38

Virtual Server

/Common/EXT\_VIP\_10.10.99.30

-

No-lookup

10.10.99.222

49478

/Common/outside

No-lookup

10.10.99.30

443

10.10.99.222

49478

\_loopback

1.1.1.1

80

**Note:** View new network firewall log entries. Examine the data collected there.

**Note:** This completes Module 1 - Lab 3

## 2.1.4 Lab 4: Configure A Firewall Policy and Firewall Rules For Each Application

A network firewall policy is a collection of network firewall rules that can be applied to a virtual server. In our lab, we will create two policies, each of which includes two rules. This policy will then be applied to the appropriate virtual servers and tested.

### Create The geo\_restrict Firewall Rule List and Firewall Policy.

This example provides a firewall policy to the **www.site1.com** portion of the application. A real world example of this would be with companies hosting cryptographic software which is subject to export restrictions. In this case we will use the Geolocation feature to block access from a couple countries only and only on the site1.com application.

**Navigation:** Security > Network Firewall > Policies, then click Create

<b>Name</b>	site1_policy
-------------	--------------

Security >> Network Firewall : Policies >> New Policy...

**General Properties**

Name	site1_policy
Description	

Cancel Repeat Finished

---

**Note:** Leave all other fields using the default values.

---

**Navigation:** Click Finished

Create an IP Drop Network Firewall Rule List

Note: we could have created a rule directly in the policy. Using Rule lists allows us to re-use this in multiple policies

**Navigation:** Security > Network Firewall > Rule Lists then click Create

<b>Name</b>	geo_restrict_rule_list
-------------	------------------------

Security >> Network Firewall : Rule Lists >> New Rule List...

**General Properties**

Name	geo_restrict_rule_list
Description	

Cancel Repeat Finished

**Navigation:** Click Finished

**Navigation:** Click the geo\_restrict\_rule\_list you just created

**Navigation:** Click Add

<b>Name</b>	block_AF_CN_CA
<b>Order</b>	First
<b>Protocol</b>	Any
<b>Source</b>	Country/Region: AF,CN,CA
<b>Action</b>	Drop
<b>Logging</b>	Enabled

---

**Note:** Leave all other fields using the default values.

---

**Navigation:** Click repeat

**Navigation:** Click Add

<b>Name</b>	permit_log
<b>Order</b>	Last
<b>Action</b>	Accept
<b>Logging</b>	Enabled

Create Permit Log Network Firewall Rule.

**Note:** Leave all other fields using the default values.

**Navigation:** Click Finished

### Assign the geo\_restrict\_rule\_list to the site1\_policy

**Navigation:** Security > Network Firewall > Policies

**Navigation:** Click on **site1\_policy** then click Add Rule List

In the name field start typing **geo** in the rule list field. Select **geo\_restrict\_rule\_list**

**Navigation:** Click Done Editing

**Navigation:** Click Commit Changes to System

**Note:** We want to validate the site is available before and after applying the Network Firewall Policy

From client machine try to connect again to the application site.

URL: <https://site1.com>

We will use Cywin Terminal for more controlled testing in

```
curl -k https://10.1.10.30/ -H 'Host: site1.com'
```

```

external_user@JUMPBOX ~
$ curl -k https://10.1.10.30/ -H 'Host: site1.com'
  % Total    % Received % Xferd  Average Speed   Time    Time     Time  Current
                                 Dload  Upload  Total   Spent    Left   Speed
100 3957 100 3957    0     0 11954      0 --:--:-- --:--:-- --:--:-- 447k<html>
<head>
<TITLE>Using virtual server site1.com and pool member 10.1.20.11 (Node #1)</TITLE>
<meta http-equiv="Content-Type" content="text/html; charset=us-ascii" />
<script language="javascript">
  function showCookieLink() {
    var ele = document.getElementById("CookieLink");
    ele.style.display = "block";
  }
</script>

<meta http-equiv="pragma" content="no-cache" />
<script language="JavaScript" type="text/javascript">
<!--
function loadInfo() {
  var http;
  if(window.ActiveXObject){
    http = new ActiveXObject("Microsoft.XMLHTTP");
  }else if(window.XMLHttpRequest){

```

**Note:** We want to validate the site is available before and after applying the Network Firewall Policy

### Assign The Policy To The Virtual Server

A unique feature of the BIG-IP Firewall Module allows L3-4 security policies to be assigned specifically to an application i.e. Virtual Server. So each application can have its own firewall policy separate from other application virtual servers.

Apply the Network Firewall Policy to Virtual Server

**Navigation:** Local Traffic > Virtual Servers then click int\_vip\_www.site1.com\_1.1.1.1

**Navigation:** Click on the Security Tab and select Policies

Edit the Network Firewall section of the screen

<b>Virtual Server</b>	int_vip_www.site1.com_1.1.1.1
<b>Enforcement</b>	Enabled
<b>Policy</b>	site1_policy
<b>Log Profile</b>	enabled
<b>Log Profile</b>	firewall_log_profile

Local Traffic » Virtual Servers : Virtual Server List » int\_vip\_www.site1.com\_1.1.1.1

Policy Settings: **Basic**

Destination	1.1.1.1:80
Service	HTTP
Protocol Security	Disabled
Network Firewall	Enforcement: <b>Enabled...</b> Policy: <b>site1_policy</b> Staging: Disabled
Network Address Translation	<input type="checkbox"/> Use Device Policy <input type="checkbox"/> Use Route Domain Policy Policy: None
Maximum Bandwidth	Infinite
Service Policy	None
Eviction Policy	None
IP Intelligence	Disabled
DoS Protection Profile	Disabled
Application Cloud Security Services	Disabled
Protocol Inspection Profile	Disabled
Log Profile	Enabled... <div> <div> <b>Selected</b>            /Common  <b>Firewall_log_profile</b> </div> <div>           &lt;&lt; &gt;&gt;            Available            /Common            Log all requests            Log illegal requests            global-network            local-bot-defense         </div> </div>

**Note:** Leave all other fields using the default values.

**Navigation:** Click Update

From client machine validate the behavior of the Policy and the associated Rule List

Many enterprise sites have some or all of their content served up by Content Delivery Networks (CDN). This common use case leverages proxies to provide static content closer to the end client machines for performance. Because of this there may only be one or two IP addresses connecting to the origin website. The original IP address of the client in this case is often mapped to a common HTTP header X-Forwarded-For or some variation. In this deployment, the BIG-IP can translate the original source of the request in the XFF to the source IP address.

Use Cywin Terminal to allow us to specify the X-Forwarded-For header. . There is an iRule applied to EXT\_VIP\_10\_1\_10\_30 which SNAT's the source IP to match the X-Forwarded-For header

### XFF-SNAT iRule

```
when HTTP_REQUEST {  
    if {[HTTP::header exists "X-Forwarded-For"]} {  
        snat [HTTP::header X-Forwarded-For]  
        log local0. '[HTTP::header X-Forwarded-For]'  
    }  
}
```

```
curl -k https://10.1.10.30/ -H 'Host: sitel.com'
```

---

**Note:** Since we did not define the header, the firewall will see the RFC-1918 address of the jimp host (10.1.10.199)

---

URL: <https://site1.com>

Use the -H option in curl to define the X-Forwarded-For Header. This will trigger the iRule added to the External VIP to simulate specific IP addresses in the header

```
curl -k https://10.1.10.30/ -H 'Host:sitel.com' -H 'X-Forwarded-For: 172.16.99.5'
```

Review the logs. each connection will log events from the external and internal virtual server

**Navigation:** Security > Event Logs > Network > Firewall

Next we will simulate a connection an IP address in Beijing, China

The BIG-IP Geolocation database is supplied by Digital Element

URL: <http://www.digitalelement.com/>

URL: <https://whatismyipaddress.com/ip/1.202.2.1> shows that this address is in Beijing , China

---

**Note:** You can check the geo classification of an address from the BIG-IP CLI using the command `geoip_lookup 1.202.2.1`

---

```
curl -k https://10.1.10.30/ -H 'Host: sitel.com' -H 'X-Forwarded-For: 1.202.2.1'
```

This connection attempt will fail. Return to the BIG-IP GUI and refresh the firewall event log.

---

**Note:** you may need to zoom the browser to see the “Action” column at the right side of the screen

---

-



## Create A Separate Policy For The site2 Virtual Server

Now we want to create a second policy for access to site2

Create Network Firewall Policy

**Navigation:** Security > Network Firewall > Policies, then click Create

Security » Network Firewall : Policies » New Policy...

**General Properties**

Name	site2_policy
Description	

**Note:** Leave all other fields using the default values.

**Navigation:** Click Finished

Modify the policy with rules to Allow TCP Port 80 From Host 172.16.99.5 Network Firewall Rule and deny all other addresses . This time we will build the rules directly into the policy instead of using a Rule List

**Navigation:** Click on the site2\_policy you just created

**Navigation:** Click Add Rule pull down on the upper right - Add rule at beginning

<b>Name</b>	allow_site_172.16.99.5
<b>Protocol</b>	TCP (6)
<b>Source</b>	Address: 172.16.99.5
<b>Action</b>	Accept
<b>Logging</b>	Enabled

Security » Network Firewall : Policies » /Common/site2\_policy

**Unsaved changes to the policy!**  
One or more policy rules have been modified but not committed to the system. Changes must be committed to the system before taking effect.

**General Properties**

Name	site2_policy
Partition	Common
Description	

Filter Active Rules List Add Rule List Add Rule

Done Editing	Name	State	Protocol	Source	Destination	Actions	Logging
<input type="button" value="Done Editing"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>	allow_site2_172.16.99.5	Enabled	TCP	(Any) 172.16.99.5 <input type="button" value="Add"/>	(Any) add new destination <input type="button" value="Add"/>	Action: <input type="text" value="Accept"/> iRule: <input type="text" value="None"/> Send to Virtual: <input type="text" value="None"/> Service Policy: <input type="text" value="None"/> Protocol Inspection Profile: <input type="text" value="None"/> Classification Policy: <input type="text" value="None"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Logging

**Note:** Leave all other fields using the default values.

**Navigation:** Click Done Editing

Create Deny Log Network Firewall Rule

**Navigation:** Click Add Rule pull down on the upper right - Add rule at end

**Note:** As we are deployed in “ADC Mode” where the default action on a virtual server is ‘Accept’, we must also create a default deny rule.

For further discussion of Firewall vs ADC modes, please consult the F5 BIG-IP documentation.

URL: <https://support.f5.com/kb/en-us/products/big-ip-afm/manuals/product/network-firewall-policies-implementations-13-0-0/8.html>

<b>Name</b>	deny_log
<b>Action</b>	Drop
<b>Logging</b>	Enabled

**Note:** Leave all other fields using the default values.

**Navigation:** Click Done Editing

Security » Network Firewall : Policies » /Common/site2\_policy

Active Rules Policies Rule Lists Schedules IP Intelligence

**Unsaved changes to the policy!**  
One or more policy rules have been modified but not committed to the system. Changes must be committed to the system before taking effect.  
Commit Changes to System Cancel Changes

**General Properties**

Name	site2_policy
Partition	Common
Description	

Filter Active Rules List

ID	Name	State	Protocol	Source	Destination	Actions	Logging
2	deny_log	Enabled	Any	(Any)	(Any)	Drop	Logging

Done Editing Cancel

Auto Generate UUID

add new source Add add new destination Add

Description

Action: Drop

iRule: None

Send to Virtual: None

Service Policy: None

Protocol Inspection Profile: None

Classification Policy: None

**Navigation** Click Commit Changes To System

Security » Network Firewall : Policies » /Common/site2\_policy

Active Rules Policies Rule Lists Schedules IP Intelligence

**Unsaved changes to the policy!**  
One or more policy rules have been modified but not committed to the system. Changes must be committed to the system before taking effect.  
[Commit Changes to System](#) [Cancel Changes](#)

**General Properties**

Name	site2_policy
Partition	Common
Description	

Filter Active Rules List [Add Rule List](#) [Add Rule](#)

ID	Name	State	Protocol	Source	Destination	Actions	Logging
<input type="checkbox"/> 1	<a href="#">allow_site2_172.16.99.5</a>	Enabled	TCP	Any	Any	Accept	Yes
<input type="checkbox"/> 2	<a href="#">deny_log</a>	Enabled	Any	Any	Any	Drop	Yes

**Navigation:** Click Finished

## Apply the Network Firewall Policy to Virtual Server

**Navigation:** Local Traffic > Virtual Servers

**Navigation:** Click on int\_vip\_www.site2.com\_2.2.2.2

**Navigation:** Select the Security Tab and select Policies

<b>Virtual Server</b>	int_vip_www.site2.com_2.2.2.2
<b>Network Firewall</b>	Enabled
<b>Policy</b>	site2_policy
<b>Log Profile</b>	enabled
<b>Log Profile</b>	firewall_log_profile

**Note:** Leave all other fields using the default values.

**Navigation:** Click Update

Local Traffic » Virtual Servers : Virtual Server List » int\_vip\_www.site2.com\_2.2.2.2

Properties Resources Security Statistics

Policy Settings: Basic

Destination	2.2.2.2:80
Service	HTTP
Protocol Security	Disabled
Network Firewall	Enforcement: Enabled...  Policy: site2_policy Staging: Disabled
Network Address Translation	<input type="checkbox"/> Use Device Policy <input type="checkbox"/> Use Route Domain Policy Policy None
Maximum Bandwidth	Infinite
Service Policy	None
Eviction Policy	None
IP Intelligence	Disabled
DoS Protection Profile	Disabled
Application Cloud Security Services	Disabled
Protocol Inspection Profile	Disabled
Log Profile	Enabled... <div> <div> <p>Selected</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>/Common</li> <li>Firewall_log_publisher</li> </ul> </div> <div> <p>Available</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>/Common</li> <li>Log all requests</li> <li>Log illegal requests</li> <li>global-network</li> <li>local-bot-defense</li> </ul> </div> <div> <p>&lt;&lt;</p> <p>&gt;&gt;</p> </div> </div>

Update

**Note:** Leave all other fields using the default values.

**Navigation:** Click Update

From client machine

From client machine validate the behavior of the Policy and the associated Rule List

We will use Cywin Terminal to allow us to specify the source IP address. This is done by leveraging an iRule which SNAT's the source IP to match the X-Forwarded-For header. This iRule is applied to EXT\_VIP\_10\_1\_10\_30

```
curl -k https://10.1.10.30/ -H 'Host:site2.com' -H 'X-Forwarded-For: 172.16.99.5'
```

```
curl -k https://10.1.10.30/ -H 'Host:site2.com' -H 'X-Forwarded-For: 172.16.99.7'
```

**Note:** This is expected to fail

**Note:** This concludes Module 1 - Lab 4

## 2.1.5 Lab 5: Provide Firewall Security Policies For CDN Enabled Applications

Many enterprise sites have some or all of their content served up by Content Delivery Networks (CDN). This common use case leverages proxies to provide static content closer to the end client machines for performance. Because of this there may only be one or two IP addresses connecting to the origin website. The original IP address of the client in this case is often mapped to a common HTTP header X-Forwarded-For or some variation. In this deployment, the BIG-IP can translate the original source of the request in the XFF to the source IP address.

In this case we are going to leverage iRules to modify the traffic coming from the CDN networks so we can apply a firewall policy to it. The iRule to accomplish this is already installed on your BIG-IP and applied to EXT\_VIP\_10\_1\_10\_30. We have been leveraging it to run the tests in previous exercises

```
when HTTP_REQUEST {
  if { [HTTP::header exists "X-Forwarded-For"] } {
    snat [HTTP::header X-Forwarded-For]
    log local0. [HTTP::header X-Forwarded-For]
  }
}
```

Examining the iRule we find that it is called when an HTTP request happens. It then checks to see if the X-Forwarded-For header exists (We wouldn't want to SNAT to a non-existent IP address) and if it does it modifies the source IP address of the request to the IP address provided in the header.

### Verify that the iRule is assigned to the Virtual Server

**Navigation:** Local Traffic > Virtual Servers

**Navigation:** Click on the EXT\_VIP\_10.1.10.30 virtual server

**Navigation:** Click on the Resources tab

Local Traffic » Virtual Servers : Virtual Server List » EXT\_VIP\_10\_1\_10\_30

Properties Resources Security Statistics

**Load Balancing**

Default Pool	pool_site1.com
Default Persistence Profile	None
Fallback Persistence Profile	None

Update

**iRules** Manage...

Name
/Common/XFF-SNAT

**Policies** Manage...

Name
/Common/HTTPS_Virtual_Targeting_Policy_L7V3

**Navigation:** Click on the Manage button

This is where you assign iRules

**Navigation:** Click on the Cancel button since the iRule is already assigned

Local Traffic » Virtual Servers : Virtual Server List » EXT\_VIP\_10.10.99.30

Properties Resources Security Statistics

**Resource Management**

	Enabled	Available
iRule	/Common XFF-SNAT	/Common _sys_APM_ExchangeSupport_OA_BasicAuth _sys_APM_ExchangeSupport_OA_NtlmAuth _sys_APM_ExchangeSupport_helper _sys_APM_ExchangeSupport_main

Up Down

Cancel Finished

### Validate SNAT Function

We tested functionality in prior exercises with the commands below. Leverage curl from the Cygwin Terminal to insert the X-Forwarded-For header in to the request.

```
curl -k https://10.1.10.30 -H 'Host: site1.com' -H 'X-Forwarded-For: 1.202.2.1'
```

**Expected Result:** The site should be blocked by the `geo_restrict_rule_list` and generate a 403 Forbidden response

**Note:** Optionally you can log into the CLI on the BIG-IP. Putty BIGIP\_A –Username: root Password: f5DEMOs4u Then tail -f /var/log/ltm. The iRule logs the SIP

Validate that requests sourced from the X-Forwarded-For IP address of 172.16.99.5 allowed.

```
curl -k https://10.1.10.30 -H 'Host:site1.com' -H 'X-Forwarded-For: 172.16.99.5'
```

**Expected Result:** Page will work

```
{
  "web-app": {
    "servlet": [
      {
        "servlet-name": "cofaxCDS",
        "servlet-class": "org.cofax.cds.CDSServlet",
```

## Solve For TCP Issues With CDN Networks

The next step is to solve for the TCP connection issue with CDN providers. While we are provided the originating client IP address, dropping or resetting the connection can be problematic for other users of the application. This solution is accomplished via AFM iRules. The iRule is already provided for you. We need to apply it to the Network Firewall `downloads_policy` Policy. It still is logged as a drop or reset in the firewall logs. We allow it to be processed slightly further so that a Layer 7 response can be provided.

**Navigation:** Security > Network Firewall > Rule Lists

**Navigation:** Select `geo_restrict_rule_list`

**Navigation:** Select `block_AF_CN_CA`

**Navigation:** Add the `AFM_403_Downloads` iRule to the rule list

Security » Network Firewall : Rule Lists » geo\_restrict\_rule\_list : block\_AF\_CN\_CA

⚙️ Properties

**Rule Properties**

Name	block_AF_CN_CA	
UUID	<input type="checkbox"/> Auto Generate UUID	
Partition / Path	Common	
Description	<input type="text"/>	
State	Enabled ▼	
Protocol	Any ▼	
Source	Subscriber: Any ▼ Address/Region: Specify... ▼ <input checked="" type="radio"/> Address <input type="radio"/> Address List <input type="radio"/> Address Range <input type="radio"/> Blacklist Categories <input type="radio"/> C... <div>             Afghanistan (AF)              Canada (CA)              China (CN)         </div> Edit Delete VLAN / Tunnel: Any ▼ Zone: Any ▼	
Destination	Address/Region: Any ▼ Zone: Any ▼	
iRule	AFM_403_Downloads ▼	
iRule Sampling	Disabled ▼	
Action	Drop ▼	
Send to Virtual	None ▼	
Logging	Enabled ▼	
Service Policy	None ▼	
Protocol Inspection Profile	None ▼	
Classification Policy	None ▼	

Update Delete

**Navigation** Click Update

Validate that denied requests are now responded with a Layer 7 **403 Error Page**.

```
curl -k https://10.1.10.30/ -H 'Host:site1.com' -H 'X-Forwarded-For: 1.202.2.1'
```

Expected Result: Instead of the traffic getting dropped, a 403 error should be returned.

```
<html>
  <head>
    <title>403 Forbidden</title>
  </head>
  <body>
```

(continues on next page)



(continued from previous page)

```
403 Forbidden Download of Cryptographic Software Is Restricted
</body>
</html>
```

**Attention:** Since a TCP solution could cause users to be blocked without explanation, the HTML error response will traverse the CDN network back only to the originating client. Using a unique error code such as 418 (I Am A Teapot) would allow you to determine that the webserver is likely not the source of the response. It would also allow the CDN network providers to track these error codes. Try to find one that has a sense of humor.

**Note:** This concludes Module 1 - Lab 5

## 2.1.6 Lab 6: Configure HTTP security

HTTP security profiles are used to apply basic HTTP security to a virtual server. Significantly more advanced HTTP security is available by adding ASM (Application Security Manager).

### Configure An HTTP Security Profile And Apply It To The External Virtual Server.

On the BIG-IP:

**Navigation:** Security > Protocol Security > Security Profiles > HTTP, then click Create.

<b>Profile Name</b>	demo_http_security
<b>Custom</b>	Checked
<b>Profile is case sensitive</b>	Checked
<b>HTTP Protocol Checks</b>	Check All

Security » Protocol Security : Security Profiles : HTTP » New HTTP Security Profile...

Profile Properties Custom ☐

Profile Name	demo_http_security
Partition / Path	Common
Parent Profile	http_security ▼
Profile Description	
Profile is case sensitive	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled <input type="checkbox"/>

HTTP Protocol Checks Request Checks Blocking Page Custom ☒

HTTP Protocol Checks	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Header name with no header value	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Several Content-Length headers	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Chunked request with Content-Length header	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Null in request headers	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Null in request body	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> POST request with Content-Length: 0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Body in GET or HEAD requests	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Content length should be a positive number	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Bad HTTP version	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> High ASCII characters in headers	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Host header contains IP address	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Unparsable request content	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Bad host header value	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Check maximum number of headers 20	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Alarm <input type="checkbox"/> Block <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		
Evasion Techniques Checks	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Alarm <input type="checkbox"/> Block <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	

Cancel Create

**Note:** Leave all other fields using the default values.

**Navigation:** Click Request Checks Tab.

**Note:** Leave the default Methods. Changing Methods is a powerful way to protect your web sites

File Types Select All

Security » Protocol Security : Security Profiles : HTTP » New HTTP Security Profile...

**Profile Properties** Custom

Profile Name	demo_http_security
Partition / Path	Common
Parent Profile	http_security
Profile Description	
Profile is case sensitive	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled

**HTTP Protocol Checks** Request Checks Blocking Page Custom

Length Checks	URL length	<input type="radio"/> Any <input checked="" type="radio"/> Length: 1024 bytes	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	Query String length	<input type="radio"/> Any <input checked="" type="radio"/> Length: 1024 bytes	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	Request length	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Any <input type="radio"/> Length: 0 bytes	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	POST data length	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Any <input type="radio"/> Length: 0 bytes	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Alarm <input type="checkbox"/> Block	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Methods	Allowed:	Available:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	<div> <div>GET HEAD POST</div> <div>&lt;&lt; &gt;&gt;</div> <div>ACL BCOPY BDELETE BMOVE BPROPFIND</div> </div>		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Alarm <input type="checkbox"/> Block	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
File Types	Define Disallowed		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	<div> <div>Selected:</div> <div>Available:</div> <div> <div>asp aspx bmp cgi css</div> <div>&lt;&lt; &gt;&gt;</div> <div></div> </div> </div>		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Alarm <input type="checkbox"/> Block	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Mandatory Headers	Mandatory:	Available:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	<div> <div></div> <div>&lt;&lt; &gt;&gt;</div> <div>authorization cookie referer</div> </div>		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Alarm <input type="checkbox"/> Block	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Cancel Create

**Navigation:** Click Blocking Page Tab.

<b>Response Type</b>	Custom Response
<b>Response Body</b>	Insert "Please contact the helpdesk at x1234" as noted below

**Security » Protocol Security : Security Profiles : HTTP » HTTP Profile Properties**

**HTTP Profile Properties**

**Profile Properties**

Profile Name	demo_http_security
Partition / Path	Common
Parent Profile	http_security ▼
Profile Description	
Profile is case sensitive	Yes

HTTP Protocol Checks Request Checks **Blocking Page** Custom ☐

**Response Type** Custom Response ▼

**Response Headers**

```
HTTP/1.1 200 OK
Cache-Control: no-cache
Pragma: no-cache
Connection: close
```

Paste Default Response Header

**Response Body**

Upload File: Choose File No file chosen Upload

```
<html><head><title>Request Rejected</title></head><body>The requested URL
was rejected. Please contact the helpdesk at x1234.<br><br>Your support ID
is: <%=TS.request.ID()%></body></html>
```

Paste Default Response Body Show...

Cancel Finished

**Note:** Leave all other fields using the default values.

**Navigation:** Click Create

**Note:** We did not put the policy in Blocking mode. We will do that after we verify functionality

Apply the HTTP security profile to the external virtual server.

**Navigation:** Local Traffic > Virtual Servers > Virtual Server List >

**Navigation:** Select EXT\_VIP\_10.1.10.30

**Navigation:** Select the Security tab

<b>Protocol Security</b>	Enabled	demo_http_security
--------------------------	---------	--------------------

**Local Traffic » Virtual Servers : Virtual Server List » EXT\_VIP\_10.10.99.30**

⚙️
Properties
Resources
**Security**
Statistics

**Policy Settings:** Basic

Destination	10.10.99.30:443
Service	HTTPS
Application Security Policy	Disabled
<b>Protocol Security</b>	<div>Enabled...</div> <div>Profile: demo_http_security</div>
Network Firewall	Enforcement: Disabled Staging: Disabled
Network Address Translation	<input type="checkbox"/> Use Device Policy <input type="checkbox"/> Use Route Domain Policy Policy: None
Service Policy	None
IP Intelligence	Disabled
DoS Protection Profile	Disabled
Anti-Fraud Profile	Disabled
Log Profile	<div> <div>Enabled...</div> <div> <div>Selected</div> <div>Available</div> <div> <div>/Common firewall_log_profile</div> <div>&lt;&lt;</div> <div>&gt;&gt;</div> <div>/Common Log all requests Log illegal requests global-network local-dos</div> </div> </div> </div>

Update

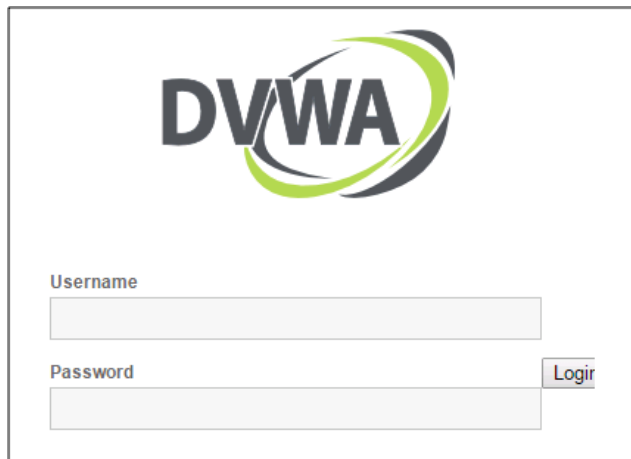
**Note:** Leave all other fields using the default values.

**Navigation:** Click Update.

Open a new web browser tab, access the virtual server and log into the application.

URL: <https://dvwa.com>

**Credentials:** admin/password



The image shows the login interface of the Damn Vulnerable Web Application (DVWA). It features the DVWA logo at the top, which consists of the letters 'DVWA' in a bold, sans-serif font, with a green swoosh underline. Below the logo are two input fields: 'Username' and 'Password'. To the right of the 'Password' field is a 'Login' button.

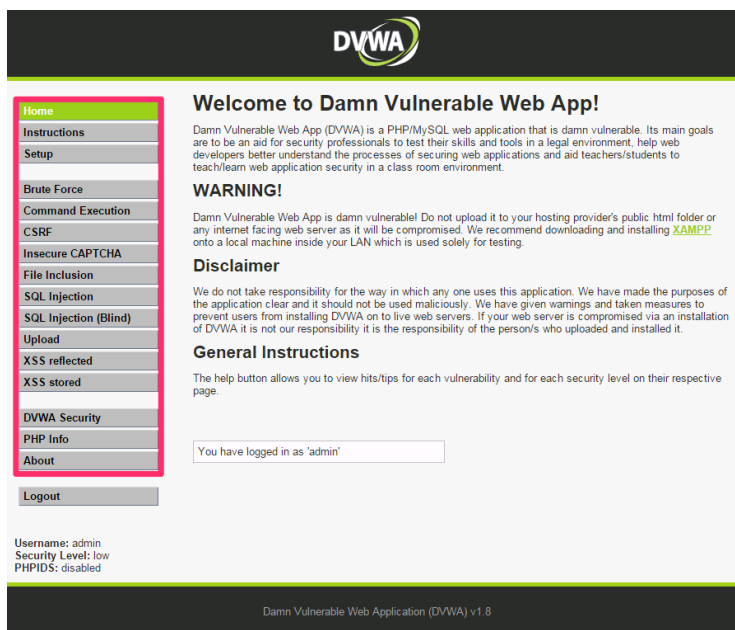
---

**Note:** This application is accessible, even though there are policy violations, because the “Block” option in the HTTP security policy is not selected.

---

Browse the application.

**Navigation:** Click on various links on the sidebar.



The image shows the main dashboard of the Damn Vulnerable Web Application (DVWA). The top header is black with the DVWA logo. Below the header is a sidebar with a list of links: Home, Instructions, Setup, Brute Force, Command Execution, CSRF, Insecure CAPTCHA, File Inclusion, SQL Injection, SQL Injection (Blind), Upload, XSS reflected, XSS stored, DVWA Security, PHP Info, and About. The main content area has a black background with white text. It starts with a 'Welcome to Damn Vulnerable Web App!' message, followed by a 'WARNING!' section, a 'Disclaimer' section, and a 'General Instructions' section. At the bottom of the main content area, there is a status bar that says 'You have logged in as 'admin''. Below the status bar is a footer that says 'Damn Vulnerable Web Application (DVWA) v1.8'.

---

**Note:** This traffic will generate network firewall log entries because the Alarm option in the HTTP security policy is selected.

---

On BIG-IP

Review the log entries created in the previous step.

**Navigation:** Security > Event Logs > Protocol > HTTP

Security » Event Logs : Protocol : HTTP												
Protocol			Network			DoS			Logging Profiles			
Last Hour [Search] Custom Search...												
		Source			Destination							
Time	Virtual Server	Profile Name	Address	Port	Geolocation	Address	Port	Route Domain	Description	Support ID	Violation	Action
2015-07-11 16:37:44	/Common/demo_http_vs	/Common/demo_http_security	192.168.1.10	49679	NA	192.168.1.50	80	0	Host header contains IP address	315007152190128139	HTTP protocol compliance failed	HTTP /dwa/vulnerabilities/sql Blind/ ALARM
2015-07-11 16:37:43	/Common/demo_http_vs	/Common/demo_http_security	192.168.1.10	49678	NA	192.168.1.50	80	0	Host header contains IP address	315007152190128136	HTTP protocol compliance failed	HTTP /dwa/vulnerabilities/sqli/ ALARM
2015-07-11 16:37:43	/Common/demo_http_vs	/Common/demo_http_security	192.168.1.10	49677	NA	192.168.1.50	80	0	Host header contains IP address	315007152190128137	HTTP protocol compliance failed	HTTP /dwa/vulnerabilities/capcha/ ALARM
2015-07-11 16:37:42	/Common/demo_http_vs	/Common/demo_http_security	192.168.1.10	49674	NA	192.168.1.50	80	0	Host header contains IP address	315007152190128134	HTTP protocol compliance failed	HTTP /dwa/vulnerabilities/ ALARM
2015-07-11 16:37:42	/Common/demo_http_vs	/Common/demo_http_security	192.168.1.10	49671	NA	192.168.1.50	80	0	Host header contains IP address	315007152190128135	HTTP protocol compliance failed	HTTP /dwa/vulnerabilities/csr/ ALARM
2015-07-11 16:37:41	/Common/demo_http_vs	/Common/demo_http_security	192.168.1.10	49670	NA	192.168.1.50	80	0	Host header contains IP address	315007152190128132	HTTP protocol compliance failed	HTTP /dwa/vulnerabilities/exec/ ALARM
2015-07-11 16:37:41	/Common/demo_http_vs	/Common/demo_http_security	192.168.1.10	49669	NA	192.168.1.50	80	0	Host header contains IP address	315007152190128133	HTTP protocol compliance failed	HTTP /dwa/vulnerabilities/brute/ ALARM
2015-07-11 16:37:40	/Common/demo_http_vs	/Common/demo_http_security	192.168.1.10	49668	NA	192.168.1.50	80	0	NA	315007152190128130	Illegal file type	HTTP /dwa/setup.php ALARM
2015-07-11 16:37:40	/Common/demo_http_vs	/Common/demo_http_security	192.168.1.10	49667	NA	192.168.1.50	80	0	Host header contains IP address	315007152190128131	HTTP protocol compliance failed	HTTP /dwa/ ALARM
2015-07-11 16:37:40	/Common/demo_http_vs	/Common/demo_http_security	192.168.1.10	49666	NA	192.168.1.50	80	0	Host header contains IP address	315007152190128130	HTTP protocol compliance failed	HTTP /dwa/setup.php ALARM

**Note:** Your log entries may be different than the example shown above but the concept should be the same.

Edit the demo\_http\_security HTTP security profile.

**Navigation:** Security > Protocol Security > Security Profiles > HTTP

**Navigation:** Select the **demo\_http\_security** profile

**Navigation:** Select the Request Checks Tab

Security » Protocol Security : Security Profiles : HTTP » HTTP Profile Properties

HTTP Profile Properties

Profile Properties

Profile Name	demo_http_security
Partition / Path	Common
Parent Profile	http_security
Profile Description	
Profile is case sensitive	Yes

HTTP Protocol Checks

Request Checks

Blocking Page

Custom

Length Checks

URL length

Any

Length: 1024 bytes

Query String length

Any

Length: 1024 bytes

Request length

Any

Length: 0 bytes

POST data length

Any

Length: 0 bytes

Alarm

Block

Methods

Allowed:

GET

HEAD

Available:

POST

OPTIONS

PUT

DELETE

TRACE

Method

Add

Alarm

Block

File Types

Define Disallowed

Selected:

asp

aspx

bmp

cgi

CSS

Available:

File Type

Add

**Note:** Leave all other fields using the default values.

**Navigation:** Click Finished.

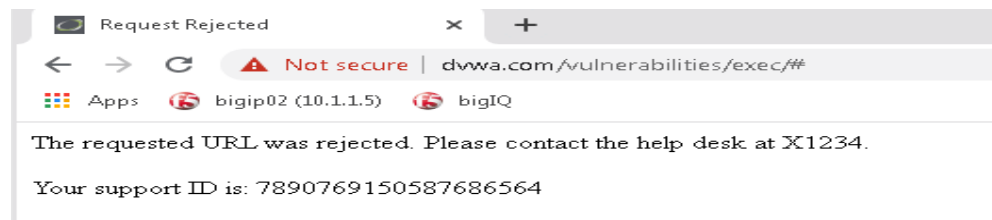
On Windows jumpbox

Close the Browser window to dvwa.com

Open a new web browser tab and access the virtual server.

URL: <https://dvwa.com>

**Credentials: admin/password**



**Attention:** This action requires a “POST” action and will be blocked because this is not allowed.

---

**Note:** This is the end of Module 1 - Lab 6

---

### 2.1.7 Lab 7: Configure A Clone Pool For SSL Visibility To IDS Sensors Or Other Security Tools

SSL encrypted traffic poses a problem for most security devices. The performance of those devices is significantly impacted when trying to decrypt SSL traffic. Since the BIG-IP is designed to handle SSL traffic with specialized hardware and optimized software libraries, it is in the unique position to ‘hand-off’ a copy of the decrypted traffic to other devices.

In this solution, since the BIG-IP is terminating SSL on the external virtual server, when we forward the traffic to the secondary virtual server in clear-text we have an opportunity to make an unencrypted copy of the application traffic and send it to an external sensor such as an IDS for further security assessment.

On BIG-IP

Inspect the preconfigured `IDS_Pool`.

**Navigation:** Local Traffic > Pools > Pool List >

**Navigation:** Click on the **Members** Tab

---

**Note:** Unencrypted traffic will be forwarded to this IP address

---

Attach the `IDS_Pool` as a clone pool to the server side of the external virtual server

**Navigation:** Local Traffic > Virtual Servers > Virtual Server List > `EXT_VIP_10_1_10_30`.

**Navigation:** Select **Advanced** from the pulldown at the top of the Configuration section

**Navigation:** Scroll to the configuration for Clone Pool (Client) and select None

**Navigation:** Scroll to the configuration for Clone Pool (Server) and select `IDS_pool`



Source Port	Preserve
Clone Pool (Client)	None
Clone Pool (Server)	<div> <div>✓ None</div> <div>/Common</div> <div>IDS_Pool</div> <div>pool_www.mysite.com</div> <div>pool_www.mysite.com-api</div> <div>pool_www.theirsite.com</div> <div>pool_www.yoursite.com</div> </div>
Auto Last Hop	
Last Hop Pool	
HTTP Analytics Profile	Application

**Navigation:** Click on update at the bottom of the page.

**Note:** Leave all other fields using the default values.

Select the Putty application from the desktop on the jump host

Load **Lamp Server** from the sessions list

### Open Lamp Server

Accept the certificate warning

login as **f5**

**Attention:** It will take about 30 seconds for the certificate login process- No password required

Input the TCPDUMP command to start capturing traffic

```
sudo tcpdump -i eth1 -c 200 port 8081
```

Initiate another attempt to connect to the website via curl using the Cygwin application on the desktop.  
Position windows on the desktop so that you can see both the Putty session and the Cygwin session

```
curl -k https://10.1.10.30:8081 -H 'Host:site1.com' -H 'X-Forwarded-For: 172.16.99.5'
curl -k https://10.1.10.30:8081 -H 'Host:site3.com' -H 'X-Forwarded-For: 172.16.99.5'
```

Initiate another attempt to connect to the websites using the browser

```
https://site2.com:8081
https://site4.com:8081
```

View the tcpdump output on the syslog-webserver.

**Attention:** It will take about 20 seconds after the transaction to appear in the tcpdump session. This is a performance problem on the lamp server

```
tcpdump: verbose output suppressed, use -v or -vv for full protocol decode
listening on eth2, link-type EN10MB (Ethernet), capture size 262144 bytes
17:25:42.585675 IP 10.10.99.222.50924 > 1.1.1.1.http: Flags [S], seq 912073522, win
↳4380, options [mss 1460,sackOK,eol], length 0
17:25:42.585905 IP 1.1.1.1.http > 10.10.99.222.50924: Flags [S.], seq 1263282834, ack
↳912073523, win 4380, options [mss 1460,sackOK,eol], length 0
17:25:42.585918 IP 10.10.99.222.50924 > 1.1.1.1.http: Flags [.] , ack 1, win 4380,
↳length 0
17:25:42.585926 IP 10.10.99.222.50924 > 1.1.1.1.http: Flags [P.], seq 1:79, ack 1,
↳win 4380, length 78
17:25:42.586750 IP 1.1.1.1.http > 10.10.99.222.50924: Flags [.] , ack 79, win 4458,
↳length 0
17:25:42.673178 IP 1.1.1.1.http > 10.10.99.222.50924: Flags [P.], seq 1:252, ack 79,
↳win 4458, length 251
17:25:42.673231 IP 10.10.99.222.50924 > 1.1.1.1.http: Flags [.] , ack 252, win 4631,
↳length 0
17:25:42.676360 IP 10.10.99.222.50924 > 1.1.1.1.http: Flags [F.], seq 79, ack 252,
↳win 4631, length 0
17:25:42.676972 IP 1.1.1.1.http > 10.10.99.222.50924: Flags [.] , ack 80, win 4458,
↳length 0
17:25:42.688028 IP 1.1.1.1.http > 10.10.99.222.50924: Flags [F.], seq 252, ack 80,
↳win 4458, length 0
17:25:42.688057 IP 10.10.99.222.50924 > 1.1.1.1.http: Flags [.] , ack 253, win 4631,
↳length 0
```

---

**Note:** Inspect the source and destination addresses. This traffic is cloned from the EXT\_VIP

---

---

**Note:** This is the end of Module 1 - Lab 7.

---

## 2.2 Module 2: F5 Dynamic Firewall Rules With iRules LX

This lab introduces iRules Language eXtensions (LX) or iRulesLX which enables node.js on the BIG-IP platform. The lab uses Tcl iRules and JavaScript code to make a MySQL call to look up a client IP address providing access control in the Multi-Layered Firewall.

This could be useful in developer driven / devops environments where the development team can modify firewall policies simply by updating a database.

**Warning:** IP addresses in screenshots are examples only. Please read the step-by-step lab instructions to ensure that you use the correct IP addresses.

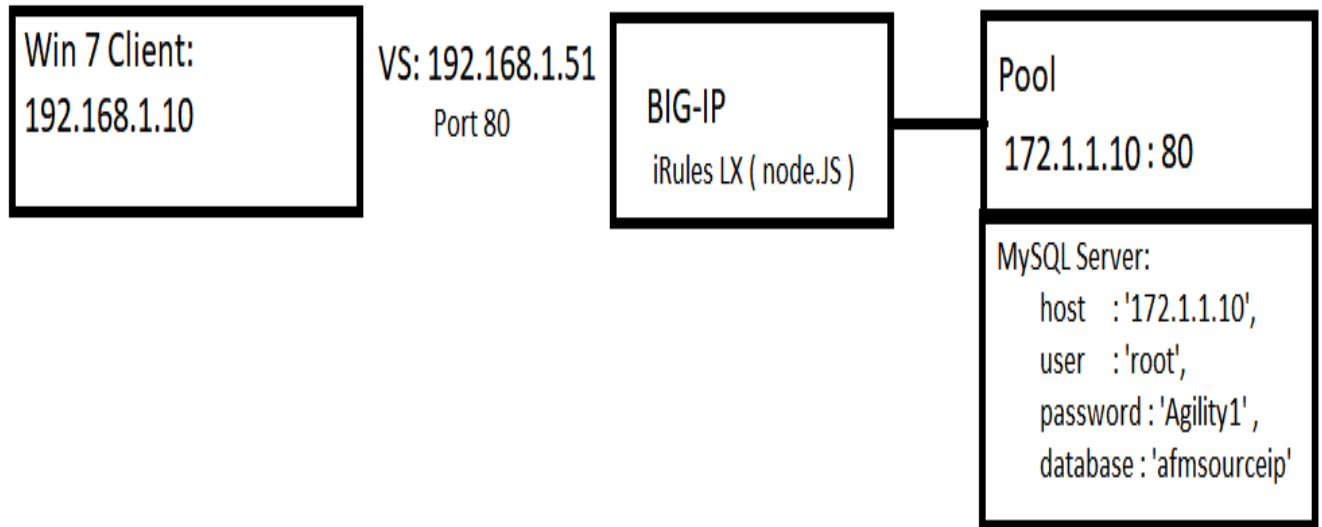
### 2.2.1 AFM with iRules LX

Estimated completion time: 15 minutes

Beginning in TMOS 12.1 BIGIP offers iRules LX which is a node.js extension to iRules. iRules LX does not replace iRules, rather allows iRules to offer additional functionality. In this lab you see how iRules LX can be used to look up client ip addresses that should be disallowed by AFM.

**Note:** You do not need skills or knowledge of iRules LX to do this lab. This lab will not go into detail on iRules LX nor will it go into detail on Node.JS, rather, this lab shows an application of this with AFM.

**Note:** We are using a different set of IP subnets just for this module, as shown in this network diagram:



**Note:** You should be comfortable creating pools and virtual servers by now. Therefore, the following steps to create pools, virtual servers, and AFM policies are kept brief and to the point.

### Create the Pool and VS

1. Create a pool named `afmmysql_pool` with one pool member ip address 172.1.1.10 and port 80, and a tcp half-open monitor. Leave all other values default.
2. Create a TCP VS named `afmmysql_vs` with a destination address of 192.168.1.51, port 80, snat Automap, and set it to use the `afmmysql_pool` pool. Leave all other values default.

### Test the Virtual Server

On the Win7 client, use curl in the cygwin cli ( or from the `c:\curl` directory in a windows command line shell ) to test the Virtual Server.

```
curl http://192.168.1.51 --connect-timeout 5
```

You will notice that you connect, and web page is shown.

```

C:\curl>curl http://192.168.1.51 --connect-timeout 5
<!DOCTYPE html PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD XHTML 1.0 Transitional//EN" "http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml1/DTD/xhtml1-transitional.dtd">
<html xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml">
  <!--
    Modified from the Debian original for Ubuntu
    Last updated: 2014-03-19
    See: https://launchpad.net/bugs/1288690
  -->
  <head>
    <meta http-equiv="Content-Type" content="text/html; charset=UTF-8" />
    <title>Apache2 Ubuntu Default Page: It works</title>
    <style type="text/css" media="screen">
      *
      {
        margin: 0px 0px 0px 0px;
        padding: 0px 0px 0px 0px;
      }
    </style>
  </head>
  <body>
    <div style="text-align: center;>
      <img alt="Ubuntu logo" data-bbox="488 444 511 467"/>
      <br/>
      <strong>Ubuntu</strong>
    </div>
  </body>
</html>
  
```

## Copy & Paste LX Code

**Note:** Don't worry, you're not doing any coding here today. Just a little copy and paste exercise. You are going to copy two files from the Windows desktop and paste them into the iRules LX workspace.

1. **Navigate:** In the BIG-IP webgui, navigate to Local Traffic->iRules-> LX Workspaces-> irules\_lx\_mysql\_workspace
2. Open the mysql\_iRulesLx.txt file in Notepad ( located on the Windows Desktop) and copy ( Ctrl-C or use Mouse ) the entire contents
3. In the Big-IP webgui, Click on rules->mysql\_irulelx
4. Replace the contents of this with the text you just copied from the mysql\_irulesLx.txt file.
5. Click "Save File"
6. In Windows, open the index.js file located on the Desktop ( it should open in NotePad ), select all, and copy ( Ctrl-C or use Mouse ) its entire contents.
7. In the Big-IP gui, click on mysql\_extension/index.js. Replace the contents of mysql\_extension/index.js with the contents of the index.js that you just copied.
8. Click "Save File"

Local Traffic » iRules : LX Workspaces » **irules\_lx\_mysql\_workspace**

### General Properties

Name	irules_lx_mysql_workspace
Partition / Path	Common
Node.js Version	6.9.1 (default) ▼

**Workspace Files**

- rules
  - mysql\_irulelx
- mysql\_extension
  - index.js
  - node\_modules
  - package.json

**Editor**

Over-write with contents of mysql\_iRulesLx.txt

Over-write with contents of index.js

## Create LX Plug-In

1. **Navigate:** to Local Traffic->iRules-> LX Plugins and create a new LX Plugin named "afmmysqlplug" using the workspace (From Workspace dropdown) irules\_lx\_mysql\_workspace.
2. Click "Finished"

Local Traffic » iRules : LX Plugins » New Plugin...

### General Properties

Name	afmmysqlplug
Description	
Log Publisher	None
From Workspace	None

Cancel Repeat Finished

- None
- /Common**
- irules\_lx\_mysql\_workspace

#### Create a new AFM Policy to use this LX Rule

**Note:** You are assumed to be pretty familiar with creating AFM policies by now, hence the following steps are kept brief and to the point.

1. Create a new AFM policy named afmmysql\_pol
2. Add a rule named afmmysql\_rule and click iRule to assign the “mysql\_lrulelx” iRule.

Security » Network Firewall : Policies » afmmysql\_pol : afmmysql\_rule

⚙ Properties

### Rule Properties

Name	afmmysql_rule
Partition / Path	Common
Description	<input type="text"/>
Type	Rule <input type="button" value="v"/>
State	Enabled <input type="button" value="v"/>
Protocol	Any <input type="button" value="v"/>
Source	Address/Region: Any <input type="button" value="v"/> VLAN / Tunnel: Any <input type="button" value="v"/>
Destination	Address/Region: Any <input type="button" value="v"/>
iRule	mysql_iruletx <input type="button" value="v"/>
iRule Sampling	Disabled <input type="button" value="v"/>
Action	Accept <input type="button" value="v"/>
Logging	Disabled <input type="button" value="v"/>
Service Policy	None <input type="button" value="v"/>

3. Click "Finished"
4. Assign this rule to the afmmysql\_vs virtual server.

### Test the VS with the LX Rule in Place

On the Win7 client, use curl in the cygwin cli ( or from c:\curl directory in a windows command line shell ) to test that the client is being blocked, as the Win7 client's ip is in the mysql database.

```
curl http://192.168.1.51 --connect-timeout 5
```

If everything went successfull, this should now timeout.

**Attention:** Ensure that the iRule is working properly, by going back to the AFM rule and setting the iRule back to None. Also examine the log files at `/var/log/ltm` on the BIG-IP ( or look in the GUI Log as shown here )

System » Logs: Local Traffic						
System	Packet Filter	Local Traffic	GSLB	Application Security	Audit	Configuration
<input type="text"/> Search						
Timestamp	Log Level	Host	Service	Status Code	Event	
Mon Jul 16 15:09:12 PDT 2018	info	afm-advanced	tmrm2[12766]		Rule /Common/afmmysqlplug/mysql_iRulex <FLOW_INIT>: Equal	
Mon Jul 16 15:09:12 PDT 2018	info	afm-advanced	tmrm2[12766]		Rule /Common/afmmysqlplug/mysql_iRulex <FLOW_INIT>: Looked up: 192.168.1.10	
Mon Jul 16 15:09:12 PDT 2018	info	afm-advanced	tmrm2[12766]		Rule /Common/afmmysqlplug/mysql_iRulex <FLOW_INIT>: \$rpc_response: 192.168.1.10	
Mon Jul 16 15:09:12 PDT 2018	info	afm-advanced	sdmd[6013]	018e0017	pid[4354] plugin[/Common/afmmysqlplug.mysql_extension] First row from MySQL is: RowDataPacket { id: 1, ip: '192.168.1.10' }	
Mon Jul 16 15:09:12 PDT 2018	info	afm-advanced	sdmd[6013]	018e0017	pid[4354] plugin[/Common/afmmysqlplug.mysql_extension] Connected to MySQL as ID 3	
Mon Jul 16 15:09:12 PDT 2018	info	afm-advanced	sdmd[6013]	018e0017	pid[4354] plugin[/Common/afmmysqlplug.mysql_extension] [ '192.168.1.10' ]	
Mon Jul 16 15:09:12 PDT 2018	info	afm-advanced	tmrm2[12766]		Rule /Common/afmmysqlplug/mysql_iRulex <FLOW_INIT>: \$RPC_HANDLE: /Common/afmmysqlplug.mysql_extension	

**Note:** This completes Module 3 - Lab 1

## 2.3 Module 3: AFM Protocol Inspection IPS

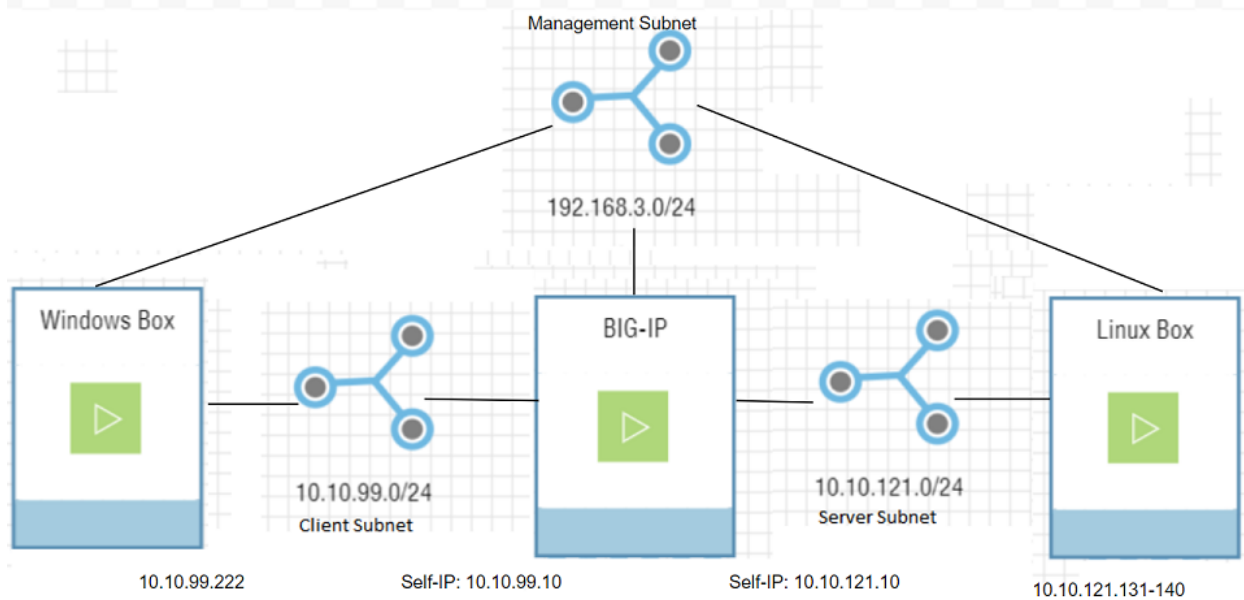
In this lab you will explore the new Intrusion Prevention System feature in 13.1.X, which is called Protocol Inspection.

Protocol Inspection includes Compliance Checks and Signatures. This lab will introduce both, including a section on writing custom Signatures.

### 2.3.1 Lab 1: Preconditions

Estimated completion time: 15 minutes

Diagram for Module 4:



There are some steps we need to complete to get the system to work as expected. We're going to get more feedback if we enable logging.

### Task 1: Enable Logging for Inspections

1. Navigate to Security > Event Logs > Logging Profiles > global-network
2. Enable Protocol Inspection
3. Click the Protocol Inspection tab and select Publisher 'local-db-publisher'
4. Click 'Update'



**Security » Event Logs : Logging Profiles » Edit Logging Profile**

**Edit Logging Profile**

**Logging Profile Properties**

Profile Name	global-network
Partition / Path	Common
Description	Default logging profile for network events
Application Security	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Protocol Security	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Network Firewall	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Network Address Translation	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
DoS Protection	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Bot Defense	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Protocol Inspection	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Classification	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled

Protocol Security   Network Firewall   **Protocol Inspection**

**Protocol Inspection**

Publisher	local-db-publisher ▼
Log Packet Payload	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled

**Note:** This completes Module 4 - Lab 1

## 2.3.2 Lab 2: Protocol Inspection - Compliance Checks

Estimated completion time: Thirty Five 35 minutes

Compliance Checks model protocols and applications and flag deviations from the model. End users can't add compliance checks, but some of them have parameters the user can modify. We'll look at a couple of these checks and modify one. Have fun!

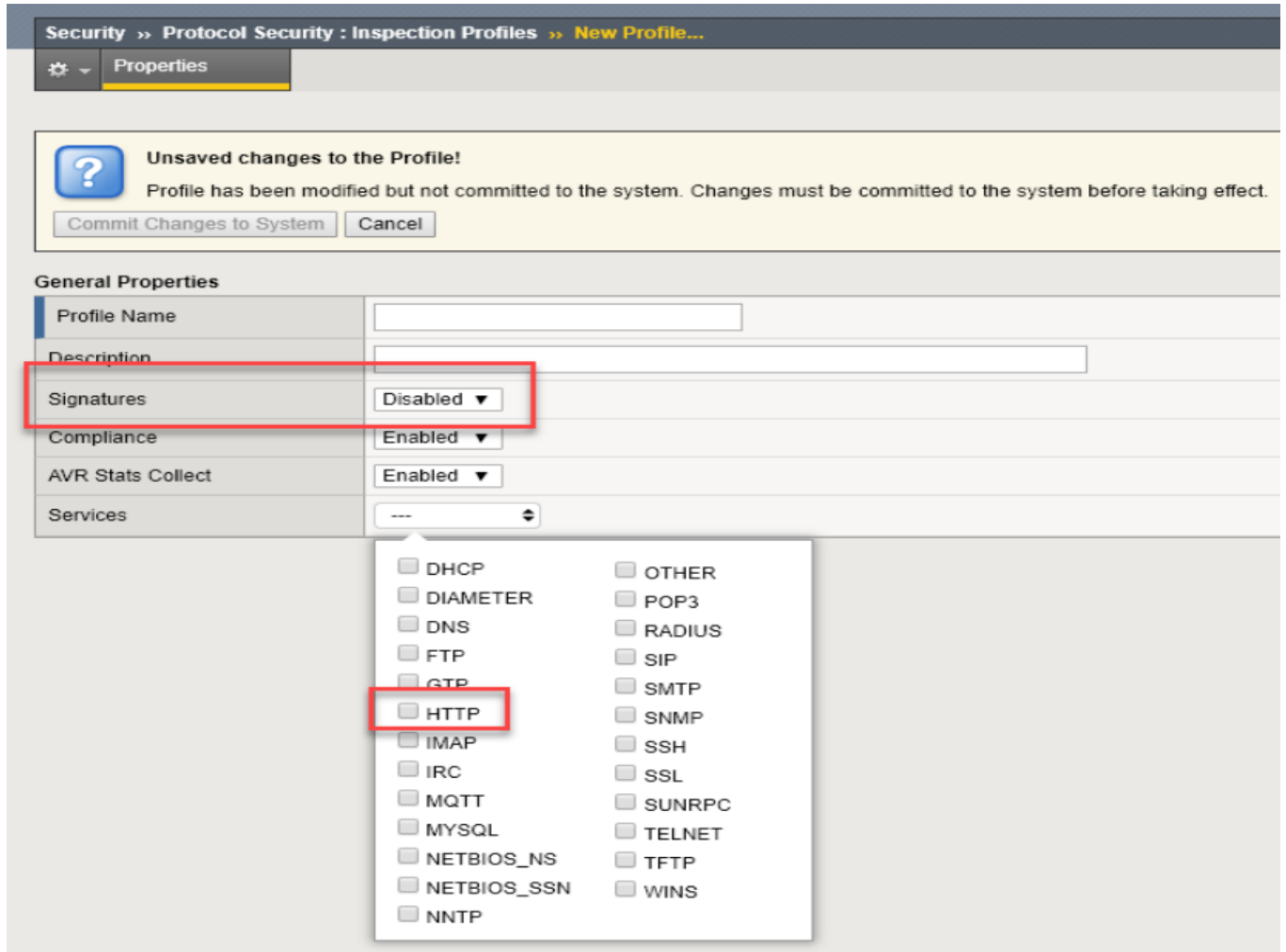
### Task 1: The Inspection Profile

You will create an Inspection Profile containing compliance checks.

1. Navigate to Security > Protocol Security > Inspection Profiles and click 'Add', select 'New'
2. Name the profile 'my-inspection-profile'
3. Disable Signatures

4. Make sure Compliance is enabled.
5. Under Services, Select HTTP.

**Note:** You have to wait a few seconds after selecting HTTP



6. When the HTTP Service appears, click to open the Inspection list for HTTP, and select Inspection Type 'compliance.'

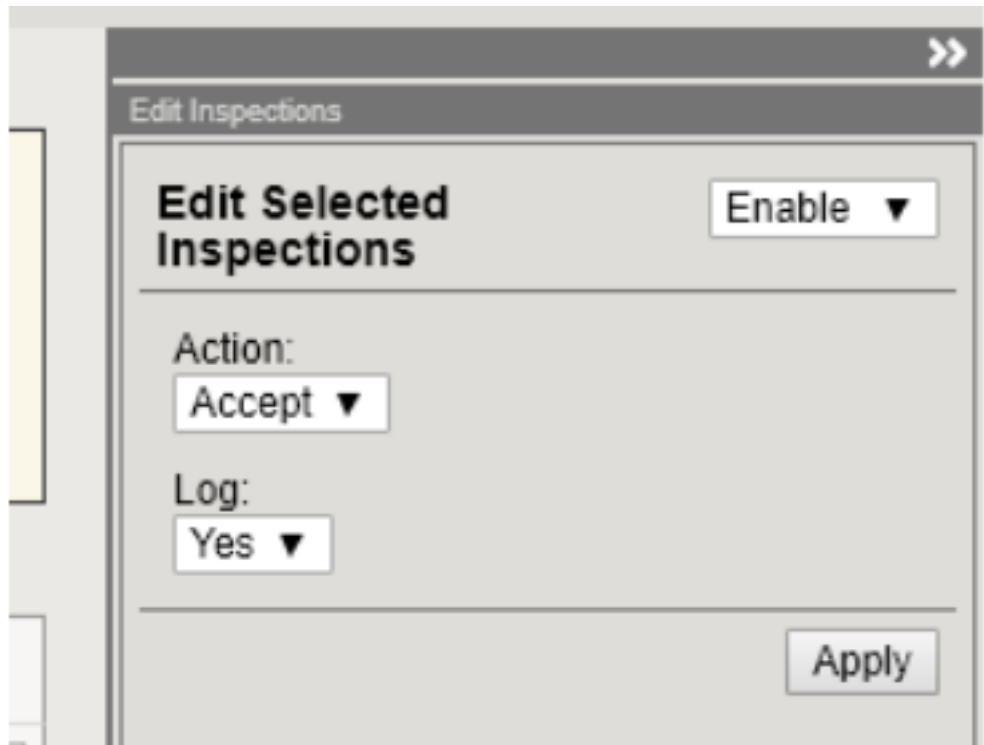
Inspection Type compliance.

The screenshot shows the F5 GUI configuration page for inspection types. A dropdown menu for 'Inspection Type' is open, showing two options: 'signature' (unchecked) and 'compliance' (checked). The 'compliance' option is highlighted with a red box. Below the menu, a table lists various HTTP compliance checks.

ID	Description	Type	Attack Type	State
11011	Bad Http Version	compliance		Disable
11000	Contains Colon	compliance		Disable
11003	Content-Length And Transfer Encoding Headers	compliance		Disable
11017	Disallowed Methods	compliance		Disable
11002	Duplicate Header Name	compliance		Disable
11015	Empty Value	compliance		Disable
11014	Invalid Method	compliance		Disable
11019	Malformed Header Value Contents	compliance		Disable
11016	Malformed Http Pdu	compliance		Disable
11013	Max Allowed Headers Request	compliance		Disable
11007	No Host Header	compliance		Disable
11018	Non CRLF Line Break	compliance		Disable
11009	Post With Zero Content Length	compliance		Disable
11008	Post Without Content-Length or Transfer-Encoding...	compliance		Disable
11004	Recursive Url Encoding	compliance		Disable
11020	Response With No Content-Length And Transfer Enc...	compliance		Disable

7. Click the checkbox to select all the HTTP compliance checks.
8. In the edit window in the upper-right of the F5 GUI, make the following selections:
  - Enable the selected inspections
  - Set the 'Action' to 'Accept'
  - Enable logging

**Note:** These should be the default actions, so they most likely are already set for you.



- Click 'Apply'
9. Click 'Commit Changes to System'

**You should now have an Inspection Policy.**

### **Task 2: Apply the Profile to the Global Policy**

1. Navigate to Security > Network Firewall > Active Rules
2. Change Context to 'Global'
3. Click 'Add Rule'
4. Make a new policy named 'global-fw-policy'
5. Make a new rule named 'fw-global-http-inspection'
6. Configure the new rule:
  - Protocol 'TCP'
  - Set the Destination port to 80
  - Action 'Accept'
  - Protocol Inspection Profile: 'my-inspection-profile'
  - Enable logging
7. Click Save

**General Properties**

Context	Global ▼
Policy Type	Enforced ▼
Policy	New... ▼ Name: global-fw-policy

**Rule Properties**

Name	fw-global-http-inspection
Description	
Order	Last ▼
Type	Rule ▼
State	Enabled ▼
Protocol	TCP ▼ 6
Source	Subscriber: Any ▼ Address/Region: Any ▼ Port: Any ▼ VLAN / Tunnel: Any ▼
Destination	Address/Region: Any ▼ Port: Specify... ▼ <input checked="" type="radio"/> Port <input type="radio"/> Port Range <input type="radio"/> Port List 80   Add 80 Edit Delete
iRule	None ▼
Action	Accept ▼
Send to Virtual	None ▼
Logging	Enabled ▼
Service Policy	None ▼
Protocol Inspection Profile	my-inspection-profile ▼

### Task 2.5: Create testing Virtual server on port 80

To get an understanding of how the IPS function works, we need the manual commands we can issue via Telnet. Because Telnet does not work very well with SSL, we need to create a virtual server on port 80 instead of the one on 443 that we have been using so far. Remember this is only for testing, and the IPS functionality can work perfectly well on encrypted traffic ( as long as we terminate the SSL )

1. Check if the pool “pool\_www.mysite.com” exists. Does it already exist? Only if it does not exist, please create it as follows:

Name	Health Monitor	Members	Service Port
pool_www.mysite.com	tcp_half_open	10.10.121.129	80

2. Create a virtual server with no HTTP profile. Use the following settings, leave everything else default.

Parameter	Value
name	IPS_VS
IP Address	10.10.99.40
Service Port	80
SNAT	automap
Pool	pool_www.mysite.com

---

**Note:** Note that we neither applied an Inspection Policy to this VS, nor did you apply a Firewall Policy to this VS. And yet, the IPS is now functional on this VS. Can you think why this is? This is because the global firewall policy is in affect, and the Inspection Policy will be invoked by the Global Firewall Policy.

---

### Task 3: Test the Inspection Profile

1. From the Cygwin session, or from the DOS prompt, enter this command:

```
telnet 10.10.99.40 80
```

**The expected output is:**

```
Trying 10.10.99.40...
Connected to 10.10.99.40
Escape character is '^['.
```

**Enter the following ( Suggestion: copy and paste ):**

```
GET /index.html HTTP/5
```

(hit Enter key two times)

The expected HTTP response is:

```
HTTP/1.1 200 OK
( and lots more HTTP headers, etc.)
```

2. Check the results.
  - Navigate to Security > Protocol Security > Inspection Profiles > my-inspectionprofile
  - Filter for Inspection Type ‘compliance’

- Look at the Total Hit Count for HTTP Compliance Check ID 11011 “Bad HTTP Version.” We expect to see a hit count of at least 1, and a missing host header count of at least 1.
- Look at the protocol inspection logs. Go to Security > Protocol Security > Inspection Logs. You can see the incoming ip address and port, among other things.

**General Properties**

Profile Name	my-inspection-profile
Description	
Signatures	Disabled
Compliance	Enabled
A/R Stats Collect	Enabled
Services	1 selected

Description, ID, References, Attack Type | Service | Protocol | Inspection Type: 1 selected | State | Risk | Accuracy | Performance Impact | Add Filter

**Inspection Type:**  
☐ signature  
☒ compliance

**HTTP**

ID	Description	Type	Attack Type	State	Risk	Accuracy	Action	Log	Protocol	User Defined	Total Hit Count
11011	Bad Http Version	compliance		Enable	medium	low	accept	yes	tcp	no	1
11000	Contains Colon	compliance		Enable	medium	low	accept	yes	tcp	no	0
11003	Content-Length And Transfer Encoding Headers	compliance		Enable	medium	low	accept	yes	tcp	no	0
11017	Disallowed Methods	compliance		Enable	medium	low	accept	yes	tcp	no	0
11002	Duplicate Header Name	compliance		Enable	medium	low	accept	yes	tcp	no	0
11015	Empty Value	compliance		Enable	medium	low	accept	yes	tcp	no	0
11014	Invalid Method	compliance		Enable	medium	low	accept	yes	tcp	no	0
11019	Malformed Header Value Contents	compliance		Enable	medium	low	accept	yes	tcp	no	0
11016	Malformed Http Pdu	compliance		Enable	medium	low	accept	yes	tcp	no	0
11013	Max Allowed Headers Request	compliance		Enable	medium	low	accept	yes	tcp	no	0
11007	No Host Header	compliance		Enable	medium	low	accept	yes	tcp	no	1

**Security > Protocol Security > Inspection Logs**

Security Profiles | Profiles Assignment | Inspection Profiles | Inspection List | **Inspection Logs**

Last Hour | Search | Custom Search...

Time	Action	ID	Name	Risk	Accuracy	Service	ACL Policy	ACL Rule Name	Virtual Server	Inspection Profile	IP	Port
2018-06-13 14:42:10	accept	11007	No Host Header	medium	low	/Common/http	/Common/global-fw-policy	fw-global-http-inspection	/Common/vs_IPS_10.10.99.40	/Common/my-inspection-profile	10.10.99.222	50423
2018-06-13 14:42:10	accept	11011	Bad Http Version	medium	low	/Common/http	/Common/global-fw-policy	fw-global-http-inspection	/Common/vs_IPS_10.10.99.40	/Common/my-inspection-profile	10.10.99.222	50423
2018-06-13 14:41:04	accept	11016	Malformed Http Pdu	medium	low	/Common/http	/Common/global-fw-policy	fw-global-http-inspection	/Common/vs_IPS_10.10.99.40	/Common/my-inspection-profile	10.10.99.222	50393
2018-06-13 14:26:25	accept	11007	No Host Header	medium	low	/Common/http	/Common/global-fw-policy	fw-global-http-inspection	/Common/vs_IPS_10.10.99.40	/Common/my-inspection-profile	10.10.99.222	50153
2018-06-13 14:26:24	accept	11011	Bad Http Version	medium	low	/Common/http	/Common/global-fw-policy	fw-global-http-inspection	/Common/vs_IPS_10.10.99.40	/Common/my-inspection-profile	10.10.99.222	50153

## Task 4: Modify a Compliance Check

1. Select Compliance Check 11017 ‘Disallowed Methods’
2. Enter the value “Head” and click ‘Add’

Properties

11017  
compliance

Enable ▼

**Description:**  
Disallowed Methods

**Documentation:**  
Disallowed Methods. The compliance violation will be raised if method (case insensitive) is one of configured methods.

**Action:**  
Reject ▼

**Log:**  
Yes ▼

**Value:**  
Head

Enter String    Add

Close

3. Click 'Commit Changes to System'

### Task 5: Test the Modified Compliance Check

1. From the Cygwin session, enter (or copy and paste) this command:

```
telnet 10.10.99.40 80
```

The expected output is:

```
Trying 10.10.99.40...
Connected to 10.10.99.40
Escape character is '^['.
```

Enter the following ( Suggestion: copy and paste ):

```
HEAD /index.html HTTP/1.1
```

Expected output:



```
HTTP/1.1 400 Bad Request
```

2. Check the results.

**Note:** Just an interesting point to make again, this is the IPS code checking HTTP, not the HTTP Profile ( This VS does not have an HTTP Profile )

- Navigate to Security > Protocol Security > Inspection Profiles > my-inspection-profile
  - Filter for Inspection Type 'compliance'
  - Look at the Total Hit Count for HTTP Compliance Check ID 11017 "Disallowed Methods." You may have to refresh the page.
  - We expect to see a hit count of 1.
4. Look at the stats. Enter the following command on the Big-IP command line:

```
tmsh show sec proto profile my-inspection-profile
```

We expect to see a Hit Count of at least 1 (more if you've done it multiple times).

```
[root@afm301:Active:Standalone] config # tmsh show sec proto profile my-inspection-profile
-----
Security::Protocol Inspection::Profile
-----
Profile Name          Inspection Id    Inspection Name    VS Name    Hit Count    Last Hit Time
-----
my-inspection-profile    11007          http_no_host_header    vs_IPS_10.10.99.40    3    06/13/18 15:13:58
my-inspection-profile    11011          http_bad_version      vs_IPS_10.10.99.40    2    06/13/18 14:42:10
my-inspection-profile    11016          http_malformed_pdu     vs_IPS_10.10.99.40    1    06/13/18 14:41:04
my-inspection-profile    11017          http_disallowed_methods vs_IPS_10.10.99.40    1    06/13/18 15:14:34
[root@afm301:Active:Standalone] config #
```

**Note:** This completes Module 4 - Lab 2

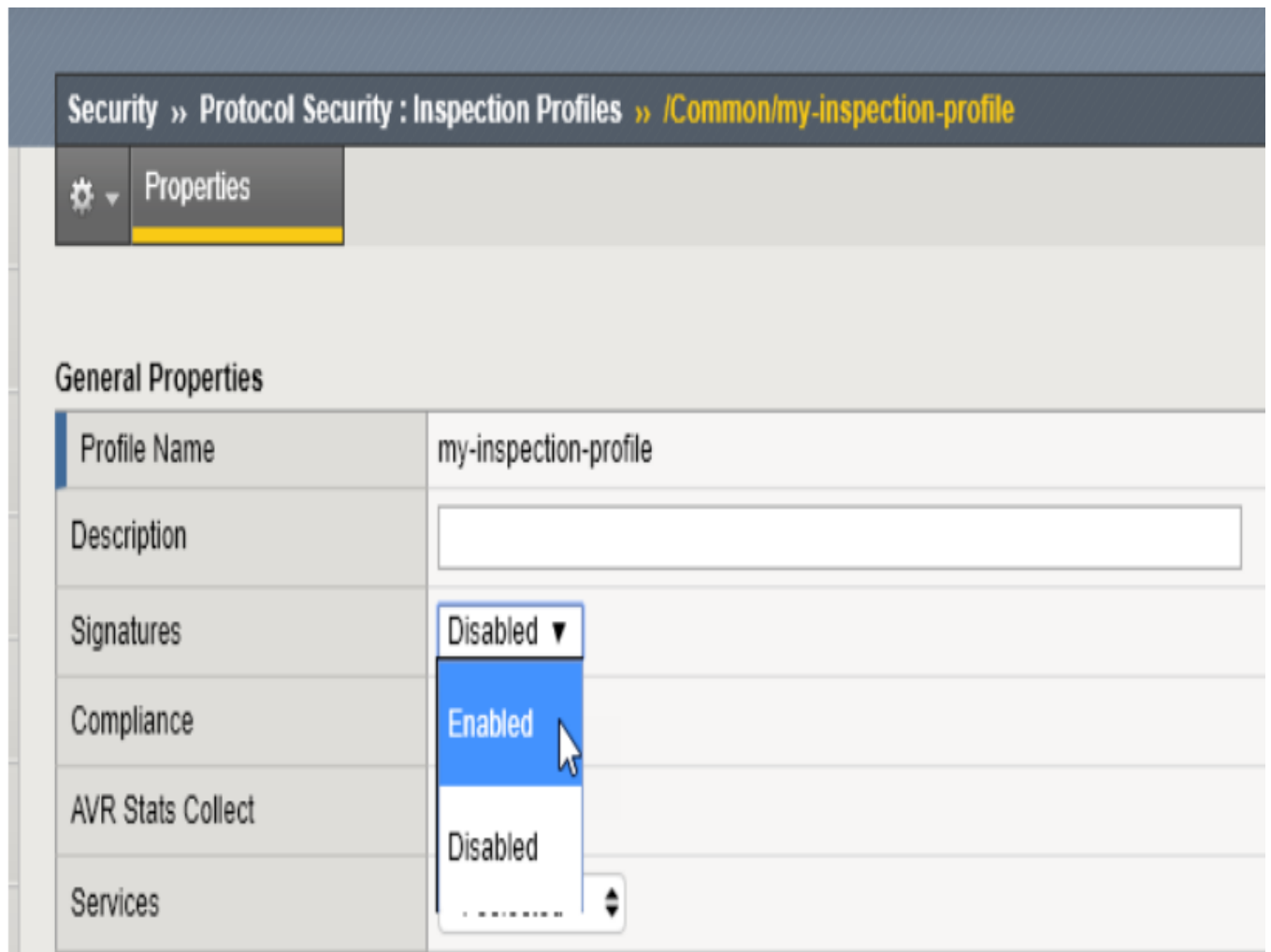
### 2.3.3 Lab 3: Protocol Inspection - Signatures

Estimated completion time: Five 5 minutes

Signature Checks can be written by the user, unlike Compliance Checks which are programmatic inspections provided only by F5. We'll start with a lab procedure that explores the use of the provided signatures.

#### Task 1: Enabling Signatures

1. Navigate to Security > Protocol Security > Inspection Profiles > my-inspection-profile
2. Enable Signatures



3. Click 'Commit Changes to System'
4. Now enable an individual signature
5. Filter on Service 'HTTP', Inspection Type 'signature'
6. Sort the filtered signatures in reverse order of ID. Click the ID column twice.

The screenshot shows the F5 Firewall configuration interface. At the top, there are filters for Service (HTTP), Inspection Type (signature), and State. Below these, a table lists various signatures. A red box highlights the 'ID' column header and the first two rows of the table:

ID	Description	Type	Attack Type
1000015	Curl connection	signature	
100025	checks if quotes can be used for content	signature	
100015	custom Morfeus	signature	
100005	distance check	signature	
100004	Hemant 2	signature	
100003	emailed 10/26 16:17	signature	
100001	stops traffic on tcp port 80	signature	tcp
100000	checks for requests for cat.gif	signature	cat gifs
2590	MALWARE-CNC Win.Trojan.Locky variant outbound co...	signature	trojan-activity
2589	MALWARE-CNC Win.Trojan.Dridex dropper variant ou...	signature	trojan-activity
2588	MALWARE-CNC Win.Trojan.Vawtrak variant outbound ...	signature	trojan-activity

- c. Scroll down to 2538 and click to edit.
- d. Configure the signature:
  - i. Enable
  - ii. Action: Reject
  - iii. Log: Yes
  - iv. Click 'Close'
  - v. Click 'Commit Changes to System'

**You should now have an enabled HTTP signature. We don't know exactly what it's checking for, but we'll get to that in the next Procedure.**

## Task 2: Reviewing the actual pattern check

The UI currently doesn't give you the exact pattern being checked for in a Signature. We will search the file where the default signatures are defined and review the one with signature id 2538.

1. From the BIG-IP command line, enter the following command:

```
grep 2538 /defaults/ips_snort_signatures.txt
```

The expected output is:

```
alert tcp any any -> any any (content:"User-Agent|3A 20|Vitruvian"; fast_pattern:only; http_header; sig_id:2538;)
```

The Signature is looking for TCP traffic with http\_header contents "User-Agent: Vitruvian"

### Task 3: Test the Signature

1. From the Desktop terminal, issue the following command:

```
curl -A Vitruvian http://10.10.99.40/cat.gif
```

This uses curl which you are already familiar with, and specifies the USER-AGENT = "Vitruvian"

The expected output is:

```
curl: (56) Recv failure: Connection reset by peer
```

2. Check the results: refresh the Inspection Profiles page, filter as needed, sort as needed, and review the Total Hit Count for Signature ID 2538.
3. Since that is a pain, use the BIG-IP command line:

```
tmsh show sec proto profile my-inspection-profile
```

We expect to see a Hit Count of 1 for Inspection ID 2538.

This was a simple test of a simple pattern match. There are some tricks to testing signatures with more elaborate patterns, which we'll explore in the final lab.

---

**Note:** This completes Module 4 - Lab 3

---

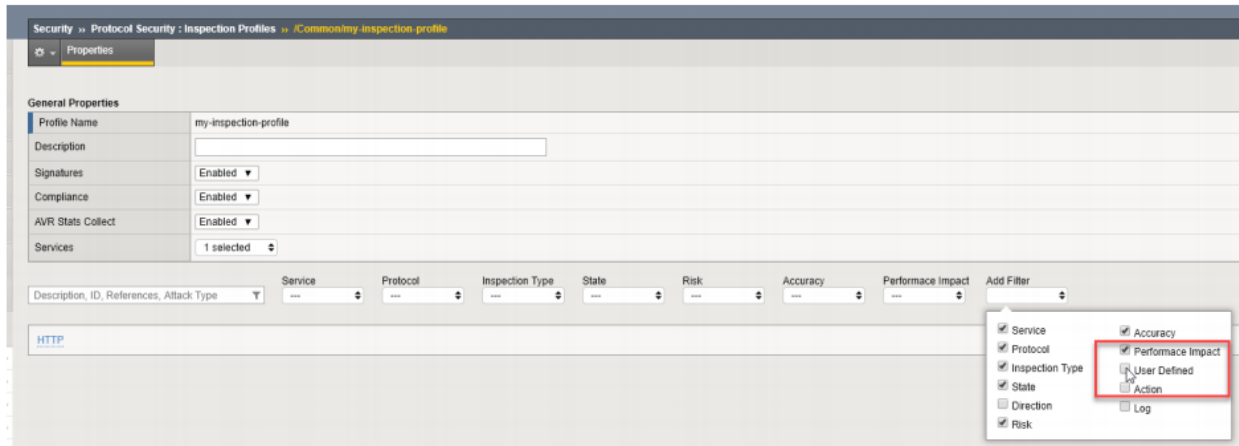
## 2.3.4 Lab 4: Protocol Inspection - Custom Signatures

Estimated completion time: 15 minutes

You can write custom signatures using a subset of the Snort® rules language. We'll walk through a couple of examples, but the intent is not to make you an expert. At most we can give you a head start in developing expertise. We'll start with a scenario: we want to detect sessions requesting a particular URI, /images/cat.gif where the User-Agent is "Attack-Bot-2000" When working with signatures, keep in mind there are just under 1600 signatures shipping with 13.1.0. It will be easier to work with custom signatures if you add a filter for them.

### Task 1: Set Filter

1. Edit the Inspection Profile 'my-inspection-profile' Click 'Add Filter' and select 'User Defined'
2. When the User Defined filter is added, select 'yes'



## Task 2: Cargo Cult Signature Authoring - finding an example to copy

It's often more pragmatic to modify an example that is close to what we want than to start from scratch. Let's start with a very simple example.

From the BIG-IP command line, issue the following command:

```
grep 1189 /defaults/ips_snort_signatures.txt
```

### Expected output:

```
alert tcp any any -> any any (content:/"rksh"; fast_pattern:only; http_uri; sig_id:1189;)
```

Parsing this, there is a Header section and an Options section. The Header is the stuff outside the parenthesis:

alert means "match" or "do something." The BIG-IP/AFM Inspection Policy will actually determine what is done with a packet that matches a signature, so it doesn't matter which action you choose. For the greatest clarity, standardize on "alert" so you don't confuse others or yourself.

tcp is the L4 protocol. The Signature has a Protocol setting outside the signature definition. They should probably agree, don't you think?

any any -> any any means "FROM any source IP+port TO any destination IP+port." We will tighten this up in a later lab procedure. Note that the signature has its own direction outside the signature definition. We probably want to avoid a conflict between these direction settings.

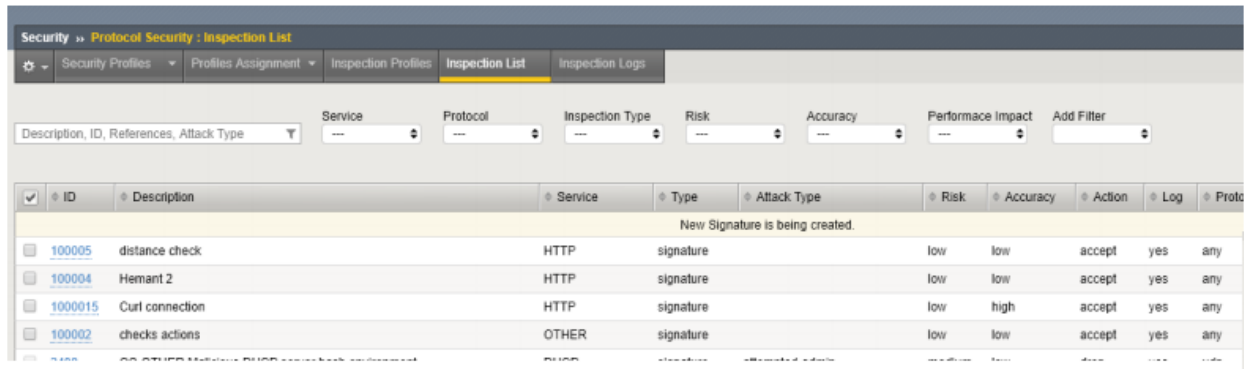
The Options are the elements inside the parenthesis. Each option is a Type: value pair, separated by a colon. Each Option is separated by a semicolon. The options in this example are:

- content - This is the pattern to match, in this case "/rksh."
- fast\_pattern - applies to the previous content definition. It's intended to be used to prequalify a rule for further processing. If you have a bunch of expensive content checks, you can look for one characteristic string to see if you need to bother with the others. In this example the effective meaning is "If you see this, look into the other content to see if we match" but there's no other content! The key takeaway is that the rules provided are not optimized. We'll try to do better when we create our own.
- http\_uri - also applies to the previous content definition. It restricts the search to the HTTP Uniform Resource Identifier.
- sig\_id - the signature id

### Task 3: Adapting our example in creating a custom signature

We're going to run into a problem that stems from MCPD parsing the contents of /defaults/ips\_snort\_signatures.txt differently than the UI parses custom signatures.

1. Create a new custom signature. Navigate to Security > Protocol Security > Inspection List and click "New Signature"



2. Enter the following:

a. Name - this is an odd field in that it doesn't show up in the Signatures page but it is the object name in the config.

Enter "no cat gif"

- b. Description - this *does* show up in the Signatures page, Event Logs, tmsh show output, etc. Make it descriptive, systematic, and concise. Enter "HTTP cat.gif request"

- c. Signature Definition - here's the big one. Based on our example, enter:

alert tcp any any -> any 80 (content:cat.gif;http\_uri; sig\_id:100000;)

This simply swaps the content URI string to match and provides a new signature ID.

- d. Click "Create." We expect configuration validation to succeed.

From the Signatures page, open your new signature up for editing to add the rest of the signature elements.

- e. Direction: to Server (agreeing with our signature definition)
- f. Protocol: TCP (agreeing with our signature definition)
- g. Attack type - "cat gifs"
- h. Service - select HTTP
- i. Click "Save"

Properties

Name\*:  
not cat gif

Description\*:  
HTTP cat.gif request

Signature Definition\*:  
alert tcp any any -> any 80 (content:cat.gif;http\_uri;  
sig\_id:100000;)

Action:  
accept ▼

Log:  
yes ▼

Accuracy:  
low ▼

Direction:  
to-server ▼

Performance Impact:  
low ▼

Protocol:  
tcp ▼

Risk:  
low ▼

Documentation:  
Enter Documentation

Attack Type:  
cat gifs

References:

3. Add this signature to the Inspection Profile my-inspection-profile

- Navigate to Security > Protocol Security > Inspection Profiles > my-inspectionprofile
- Select your new signature, 100000, and when the “Edit Inspections” window pops open, set “Action” to “Reject” and click “Apply” (“Enable” and Log: Yes are selected by default.)

The image shows two parts of the F5 GUI. The top part is the 'General Properties' window for the 'my-inspection-profile'. It has a table-like structure with the following fields:

General Properties	
Profile Name	my-inspection-profile
Description	
Signatures	Enabled ▼
Compliance	Enabled ▼
AVR Stats Collect	Enabled ▼
Services	1 selected ▲▼

Below this table, there is a search bar containing '10000' (highlighted in yellow) and a 'Service' dropdown menu.

The bottom part of the image is a modal window titled 'Properties' for the signature '100000'. It contains the following fields:

- 100000** (signature name) with an 'Enable' dropdown.
- Description:** no cat gif
- Action:** Reject ▼
- Log:** Yes ▼
- A 'Close' button at the bottom right.

c. Click “Commit Changes to Profile”



4. Test it out.

a. From the Desktop terminal, use the following command:

`curl -A test http://10.10.99.40/cat.gif`

b. Check stats. From the BIG-IP command line:

`tmsh show sec proto profile my-inspection-profile`

We expect to see a Hit Count of 1 for Inspection ID 100000.

```
[root@afm301:Active:Standalone] config # tmsh show sec proto profile my-inspection-profile
-----
Security::Protocol Inspection::Profile
-----
Profile Name          Inspection Id      Inspection Name      VS Name  Hit Count  Last Hit Time
-----
my-inspection-profile      2538  http_pua_adware_user_agent_vitruvian  vs_IPS_10.10.99.40      2  06/13/18 22:36:31
my-inspection-profile      100000          not cat gif  vs_IPS_10.10.99.40      2  06/13/18 22:58:11
[root@afm301:Active:Standalone] config #
```

**Note:** This completes Module 4 - Lab 4



## Class - F5 BIG-IP DDoS and DNS DoS Protections

This class covers the following topics:

- Detecting and Preventing DNS DoS Attacks on a Virtual Server
- Detecting and Preventing System DoS and DDoS Attacks

Expected time to complete: **2 hours**

### 3.1 Module 1 – Detecting and Preventing DNS DoS Attacks on a Virtual Server

In this section of the lab, we'll configure the steps necessary to ensure that the BIG-IP can forward traffic to the back-end server that is hosting our DNS service. We will then attack the resources behind the virtual server, mitigate the attack, and finally review the reports and logs generated by the BIG-IP.

#### 3.1.1 Base BIG-IP Configuration

In this lab, the VE has been configured with the basic system settings and the VLAN/self-IP configurations required for the BIG-IP to communicate and pass traffic on the network. We'll now need to configure the BIG-IP to listen for traffic and pass it to the back end server.

1. Launch the Firefox shortcut titled **Launch BIG-IP Web UI** on the desktop of your lab jump server. The credentials for the BIG-IP are conveniently displayed in the login banner. Just in case: **admin / 401elliottW!**
2. Navigate to **Local Traffic > Nodes** and create a new node with the following settings, leaving unspecified fields at their default value:
  - a. Name: lab-server-10.10.0.50
  - b. Address: 10.10.0.50

The screenshot shows the 'New Node...' configuration window in the F5 management console. The breadcrumb trail at the top reads 'Local Traffic >> Nodes : Node List >> New Node...'. The window is divided into two main sections: 'General Properties' and 'Configuration'. In the 'General Properties' section, the 'Name' field is set to 'lab-server-10.10.0.50', the 'Description' field is empty, and the 'Address' field is set to '10.10.0.50' with the 'Address' radio button selected over the 'FQDN' option. In the 'Configuration' section, the 'Health Monitors' dropdown is set to 'Node Default', and the 'Ratio', 'Connection Limit', and 'Connection Rate Limit' fields are all set to '0'. At the bottom of the window are three buttons: 'Cancel', 'Repeat', and 'Finished'.

Local Traffic >> Nodes : Node List >> New Node...	
<b>General Properties</b>	
Name	lab-server-10.10.0.50
Description	
Address	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Address <input type="radio"/> FQDN 10.10.0.50
<b>Configuration</b>	
Health Monitors	Node Default ▼
Ratio	1
Connection Limit	0
Connection Rate Limit	0
Cancel Repeat Finished	

3. Click **Finished** to add the new node.
4. Navigate to **Local Traffic > Pools** and create a new pool with the following settings, leaving unspecified attributes at their default value:
  - a. Name: lab-server-pool
  - b. Health Monitors: gateway\_icmp
  - c. New Members: Node List - Address: lab-server-10.10.0.50 - Service Port: \* (All Ports)
  - d. Click **Add** to add the new member to the member list.

Local Traffic » Pools : Pool List » New Pool...

Configuration: Basic

Name: lab-server-pool

Description:

Health Monitors:

Active	Available
/Common gateway_icmp	/Common http http_head_f5 https https_443

Resources

Load Balancing Method: Round Robin

Priority Group Activation: Disabled

New Members:

☐ New Node
 ☐ New FQDN Node
 ☒ Node List

Address: lab-server-10.10.0.50 (10.10.0.50)

Service Port: \* All Services

Add

Node Name	Address/FQDN	Service Port	Auto Populate	Priority
lab-server-10.10.0.50	10.10.0.50	*		0

Edit Delete

Cancel Repeat Finished

5. Click **Finished** to create the new pool.
6. Because the attack server will be sending a huge amount of traffic, we'll need a fairly large SNAT pool. Navigate to **Local Traffic > Address Translation > SNAT Pool List** and create a new SNAT pool with the following attributes:
  - a. Name: inside\_snat\_pool
  - b. Member List: 10.10.0.125, 10.10.0.126, 10.10.0.127, 10.10.0.128, 10.10.0.129, 10.10.0.130

The screenshot shows the 'New SNAT Pool' configuration window in the F5 GUI. The breadcrumb trail at the top reads 'Local Traffic >> Address Translation : SNAT Pool List >> New SNAT Pool...'. The window is divided into two main sections: 'General Properties' and 'Configuration'. In the 'General Properties' section, the 'Name' field is set to 'inside\_snat\_pool'. In the 'Configuration' section, the 'IP Address' field is set to '10.10.0.130'. Below this is an 'Add' button and a list of IP addresses: 10.10.0.125, 10.10.0.126, 10.10.0.127, 10.10.0.128, and 10.10.0.129. To the left of this list is a 'Member List' label. Below the list are 'Edit' and 'Delete' buttons. At the bottom of the window are three buttons: 'Cancel', 'Repeat', and 'Finished'.

7. Click **Finished** to commit your changes.
8. Navigate to **Local Traffic > Virtual Servers** and create a new virtual server with the following settings, leaving unspecified fields at their default value:
  - a. Name: udp\_dns\_VS
  - b. Destination Address/Mask: 10.20.0.10
  - c. Service Port: 53
  - d. Protocol: UDP
  - e. Source Address Translation: SNAT
  - f. SNAT Pool: inside\_snat\_pool
  - g. Default Pool: lab-server-pool

Local Traffic » Virtual Servers : Virtual Server List » udp\_dns\_VS

---

**General Properties**

Name	udp_dns_VS
Partition / Path	Common
Description	
Type	Standard
Source Address	0.0.0.0/0
Destination Address/Mask	10.20.0.10
Service Port	53 Other:
Notify Status to Virtual Address	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Availability	Available (Enabled) - The virtual server is available
Synccookie Status	Off
State	Enabled

---

**Configuration:** Basic

Protocol	UDP
Protocol Profile (Client)	udp
Protocol Profile (Server)	(Use Client Profile)
SSL Profile (Client)	<div>Selected</div> <div>Available</div> <div> / Common  clientssl  clientssl-insecure-compatible  clientssl-secure  crypto-server-default-clientssl </div>
SSL Profile (Server)	<div>Selected</div> <div>Available</div> <div> / Common  apm-default-serverssl  crypto-client-default-serverssl  pcqip-default-serverssl  serverssl </div>
SMTPS Profile	None
Client LDAP Profile	None
Server LDAP Profile	None
SMTP Profile	None
Netflow Profile	None
VLAN and Tunnel Traffic	All VLANs and Tunnels
Source Address Translation	SNAT
SNAT Pool	inside_snat_pool

---

**Content Rewrite**

Rewrite Profile	None
HTML Profile	None

---

**Acceleration**

Rate Class	None
------------	------

9. Click **Finished**.

10. We'll now test the new DNS virtual server. SSH into the attack host by clicking the "Attack Host (Ubuntu)" icon on the jump host desktop.

11. Issue the `dig @10.20.0.10 www.example.com +short` command on the BASH CLI of the attack host. You should see output similar to:

```
ubuntu@dnsclient:~$ dig @10.20.0.10 www.example.com +short
10.10.0.99
```

This verifies that DNS traffic is passing through the BIG-IP.

12. Return to the BIG-IP and navigate to **Local Traffic > Virtual Servers** and create a new virtual server with the following settings, leaving unspecified fields at their default value:
  - a. Name: other\_protocols\_VS
  - b. Destination Address/Mask: 10.20.0.10
  - c. Service Port: \* (All Ports)
  - d. Protocol: \* All Protocols
  - e. Any IP Profile: ipother
  - f. Source Address Translation: SNAT
  - g. SNAT Pool: inside\_snat\_pool
  - h. Default Pool: lab-server-pool



Local Traffic » Virtual Servers : Virtual Server List » New Virtual Server...

---

**General Properties**

Name	other_protocols_VS
Description	
Type	Standard
Source Address	
Destination Address/Mask	10.20.0.10
Service Port	* All Ports
Notify Status to Virtual Address	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
State	Enabled

**Configuration:** Basic

Protocol	* All Protocols
HTTP Proxy Connect Profile	None
Any IP Profile	ipother
SSH Proxy Profile	None
VLAN and Tunnel Traffic	All VLANs and Tunnels
Source Address Translation	SNAT
SNAT Pool	inside_snat_pool

**Resources**

iRules	Enabled	Available
	<div> <div></div> <div>&lt;&lt;</div> <div>&gt;&gt;</div> <div>Up</div> <div>Down</div> </div>	<div> <div>Common</div> <div> _sys_APM_ExchangeSupport_OA_BasicAuth  _sys_APM_ExchangeSupport_OA_NtlmAuth  _sys_APM_ExchangeSupport_helper  _sys_APM_ExchangeSupport_main </div> </div>
Default Pool	+	lab-server-pool

- Return to the Attack Host SSH session and attempt to SSH to the server using SSH 10.20.0.10. Simply verify that you are prompted for credentials and press CTRL+C to cancel the session. This verifies that non-DNS traffic is now flowing through the BIG-IP.

### 3.1.2 Detecting and Preventing DNS DoS Attacks on a Virtual Server

#### Establishing a DNS server baseline

Before we can attack our DNS server, we should establish a baseline for how many QPS our DNS server can handle. For this lab, let's find the magic number of QPS that causes 50% CPU utilization on the BIND process.

- Connect to the Victim Server SSH session by double-clicking the **Victim Server (Ubuntu)** shortcut on the jump host desktop.
- From the BASH prompt, enter **top** and press **Enter** to start the top utility.

3. You will see a list of running processes sorted by CPU utilization, like the output below:

```

top - 05:00:48 up 11:05, 1 user, load average: 0.12, 0.03, 0.01
Tasks: 85 total, 1 running, 84 sleeping, 0 stopped, 0 zombie
%Cpu(s): 0.3 us, 0.3 sy, 0.0 ni, 99.3 id, 0.0 wa, 0.0 hi, 0.0 si, 0.0 st
KiB Mem : 2061024 total, 1713508 free, 53900 used, 293616 buff/cache
KiB Swap: 2097148 total, 2097148 free, 0 used. 1790344 avail Mem

  PID USER      PR  NI  VIRT  RES  SHR S %CPU  %MEM    TIME+  COMMAND
 1475 ubuntu    20   0   7884   3588  3160 R   0.7   0.2   0:00.11 top
 1351 root      20   0     0     0     0 S   0.3   0.0   0:00.28 kworker/u2:1
    1 root      20   0  12248   7012  5692 S   0.0   0.3   0:04.58 systemd
    2 root      20   0     0     0     0 S   0.0   0.0   0:00.01 kthreadd
    4 root       0 -20     0     0     0 S   0.0   0.0   0:00.00 kworker/0:0H
    6 root       0 -20     0     0     0 S   0.0   0.0   0:00.00 mm_percpu_wq
    7 root      20   0     0     0     0 S   0.0   0.0   0:00.24 ksoftirqd/0
    8 root      20   0     0     0     0 S   0.0   0.0   0:00.50 rcu_sched
    9 root      20   0     0     0     0 S   0.0   0.0   0:00.00 rcu_bh
   10 root      rt    0     0     0     0 S   0.0   0.0   0:00.00 migration/0
   11 root      rt    0     0     0     0 S   0.0   0.0   0:00.41 watchdog/0
   12 root      20   0     0     0     0 S   0.0   0.0   0:00.00 cpuhp/0
   13 root      20   0     0     0     0 S   0.0   0.0   0:00.00 kdevtmpfs
   14 root       0 -20     0     0     0 S   0.0   0.0   0:00.00 netns
   15 root      20   0     0     0     0 S   0.0   0.0   0:00.02 khungtaskd
   16 root      20   0     0     0     0 S   0.0   0.0   0:00.00 oom_reaper
   17 root       0 -20     0     0     0 S   0.0   0.0   0:00.00 writeback

```

4. Connect to the Attack Host SSH session by double-clicking the **Attack Host (Ubuntu)** shortcut on the jump host desktop.
5. Start by sending 500 DNS QPS for 30 seconds to the host using the following syntax:
- ```
dnsperf -s 10.20.0.10 -d queryfile-example-current -c 20 -T 20 -l 30 -q 10000 -Q 500
```

**Hint:** There is a text file on the desktop of the jump host with all of the CLI commands used in the lab for cut/paste use.

6. Observe CPU utilization over the 30 second window for the **named** process. If the CPU utilization is below 45%, increase the QPS by increasing the -Q value. If the CPU utilization is above 55%, decrease the QPS.
7. Record the QPS required to achieve a sustained CPU utilization of approximately 50%. Consider this the QPS that the server can safely sustain for demonstration purposes.
8. Now, attack the DNS server with 10,000 QPS using the following syntax:
- ```
dnsperf -s 10.20.0.10 -d queryfile-example-current -c 20 -T 20 -l 30 -q 10000 -Q 10000
```
9. You'll notice that the CPU utilization on the victim server skyrockets, as well as DNS query timeout errors appearing on the attack server's SSH session. This shows your DNS server is overwhelmed.

### Configuring a DoS Logging Profile

We'll create a DoS logging profile so that we can see event logs in the BIG-IP UI during attack mitigation.

1. On the BIG-IP web UI, navigate to **Security > Event Logs > Logging Profiles** and create a new profile with the following values, leaving unspecified attributes at their default value:
  - a. Profile Name: dns-dos-profile-logging
  - b. DoS Protection: Enabled

## c. DNS DoS Protection Publisher: local-db-publisher

**Security » Event Logs : Logging Profiles » Create New Logging Profile...**

**Logging Profile Properties**

Profile Name	dns-dos-profile-logging
Description	
Protocol Security	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Network Firewall	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Network Address Translation	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
DoS Protection	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Protocol Inspection	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Classification	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled

**DoS Protection**

**DNS DoS Protection**

Publisher	local-db-publisher
-----------	--------------------

**SIP DoS Protection**

Publisher	none
-----------	------

**Network DoS Protection**

Publisher	none
-----------	------

Cancel Finished

**Configuring a DoS Profile**

We'll now create a DoS profile with manually configured thresholds to limit the attack's effect on our server.

1. Navigate to **Security > DoS Protection > DoS Profiles** and create a new DoS profile with the name **dns-dos-profile**.



Security >> DoS Protection : DoS Profiles >> New Dos Profile

**Properties**

Name	dns-dos-profile
Description	

Cancel Finished

2. The UI will return to the DoS Profiles list. Click the **dns-dos-profile** name.
3. Click the **Protocol Security** tab and select **DNS Security** from the drop-down.
4. Click the **DNS A Query** vector from the Attack Type list.
5. Modify the **DNS A Query** vector configuration to match the following values, leaving unspecified attributes with their default value:
  - a. State: Mitigate
  - b. Threshold Mode: Fully Manual
  - c. Detection Threshold EPS: (Set this at 80% of your safe QPS value)
  - d. Mitigation Threshold EPS: (Set this to your safe QPS value)

6. Make sure that you click **Update** to save your changes.

### Attaching a DoS Profile

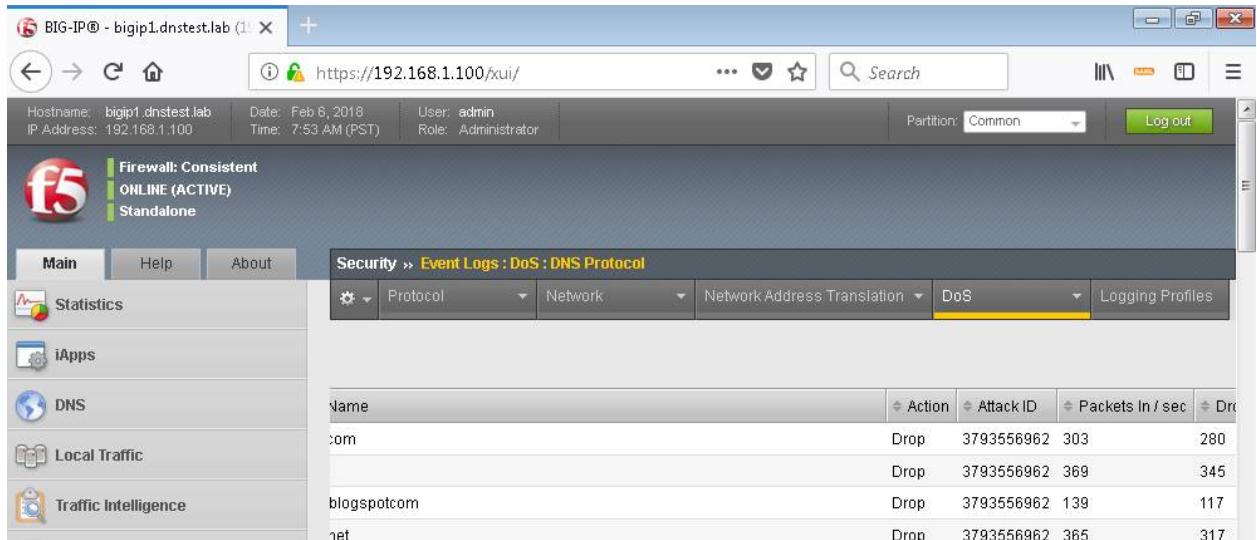
We'll attach the DoS profile to the virtual server that we configured to manage DNS traffic.

1. Navigate to **Local Traffic > Virtual Servers > Virtual Server List**.
2. Click on the **udp\_dns\_VS** name.
3. Click on the **Security** tab and select **Policies**.
4. In the **DoS Protection Profile** field, select **Enabled** and choose the **dns-dos-profile**.
5. In the **Log Profile**, select **Enabled** and move the **dns-dos-profile-logging** profile from **Available** to **Selected**.
6. Click **Update**.

### Simulate a DNS DDoS Attack

1. Open the SSH session to the victim server and ensure the top utility is running.
2. Once again, attack your DNS server from the attack host using the following syntax:  
`dnsperf -s 10.20.0.10 -d queryfile-example-current -c 20 -T 20 -l 30 -q 10000 -Q 10000`
3. On the server SSH session running the top utility, notice the CPU utilization on your server remains in a range that ensures the DNS server is not overwhelmed.

- After the attack, navigate to **Security > Event Logs > DoS > DNS Protocol**. Observe the logs to see the mitigation actions taken by the BIG-IP.



## DNS DDoS Mitigations for Continued Service

At this point, you've successfully configured the BIG-IP to limit the amount of resource utilization on the BIG-IP. Unfortunately, even valid DNS requests can be caught in the mitigation we've configured. There are further steps that can be taken to mitigate the attack that will allow non-malicious DNS queries.

## Bad Actor Detection

Bad actor detection and blacklisting allows us to completely block communications from malicious hosts at the BIG-IP, completely preventing those hosts from reaching the back-end servers. To demonstrate:

- Navigate to **Security > DoS Protection > DoS Profiles**.
- Click on the **dns-dos-profile** profile name.
- Click on the **Protocol Security** tab then select **DNS Security**.
- Click on the **DNS A Query** attack type name.
- Modify the vector as follows:
  - Bad Actor Detection: Checked
  - Per Source IP Detection Threshold EPS: 80
  - Per Source IP Mitigation Threshold EPS: 100
  - Add Source Address to Category: Checked
  - Category Name: denial\_of\_service
  - Sustained Attack Detection Time: 15 seconds
  - Category Duration Time: 60 seconds

**Properties**

**DNS A Query**

State  
Mitigate

Threshold Mode  
☐ Fully Automatic  
☐ Manual Detection / Auto Mitigation  
☒ Fully Manual

Detection Threshold EPS  
Specify 400

Detection Threshold Percent  
Specify 500

Mitigation Threshold EPS  
Specify 500

☐ Simulate Auto Threshold

☒ Bad Actor Detection

Per Source IP Detection Threshold EPS  
Specify 80

Per Source IP Mitigation Threshold EPS  
Specify 100

☒ Add Source Address to Category

Category Name denial\_of\_service

Sustained Attack Detection Time  
15 seconds

Category Duration Time  
60 seconds

☐ Allow External Advertisement

Cancel Update

6. Make sure you click **Update** to save your changes.
7. Navigate to **Security > Network Firewall > IP Intelligence > Policies** and create a new IP Intelligence policy with the following values, leaving unspecified attributes at their default values:
  - a. Name: dns-bad-actor-blocking
  - b. Default Log Actions section:
    - i. Log Blacklist Category Matches: Yes
  - c. Blacklist Matching Policy
    - i. Create a new blacklist matching policy:
      1. Blacklist Category: denial\_of\_service

Security » Network Firewall » IP Intelligence » Policies » New IP Intelligence Policy...

**General Properties**

Name: bad-actor-blocking

Description:

**IP Intelligence Policy Properties**

Feed Lists: +

Selected: /Common, Global, IP Reputation

Available:

Default Action: Drop

Default Log Actions:

Log Whitelist Overrides: No

Log Blacklist Category Matches: Yes

Blacklist Matching Policy:

Blacklist Category: denial\_of\_service

Action: Use Policy Default

Log Blacklist Category Matches: Use Policy Default

Log Whitelist Overrides: Use Policy Default

Match Override: Match Source

Add Replace

Blacklist Category	Action	Log Blacklist Category Matches	Log Whitelist Overrides	Match Override
denial_of_service	Use Policy Default	Use Policy Default	Use Policy Default	Match Source

Delete

Cancel Repeat Finished

2. Click **Add** to add the policy.
8. Click **Finished**.
9. Navigate to **Local Traffic > Virtual Servers > Virtual Server List**.
10. Click on the **udp\_dns\_VS** virtual server name.
11. Click on the **Security** tab and select **Policies**.
12. Enable **IP Intelligence** and choose the **dns-bad-actor-blocking** policy.



Local Traffic » Virtual Servers : Virtual Server List » **udp\_dns\_VS**

Properties Resources **Security** Statistics

Policy Settings: Basic

Destination	10.20.0.10:53
Service	DNS
Network Firewall	Enforcement: Disabled Staging: Disabled
Network Address Translation	<input type="checkbox"/> Use Device Policy <input type="checkbox"/> Use Route Domain Policy Policy: None
Maximum Bandwidth	0 Mbps
Service Policy	None
Eviction Policy	None
IP Intelligence	Enabled... Policy: dns-bad-actor-blocking
DoS Protection Profile	Enabled... Profile: dns-dos-profile
Auto Threshold	Relearn
Dynamic Signatures	Relearn Learning Phase End Time (Network): Learning Phase End Time(DNS):
Protocol Inspection Profile	Disabled
Log Profile	<div> <div>Enabled...</div> <div> <div>Selected</div> <div>Available</div> </div> </div> <div> <div> /Common dns-dos-profile-logging </div> <div> /Common Log all requests Log illegal requests global-network local-dos </div> </div>

Update

13. Make sure you click **Update** to save your changes.
14. Navigate to **Security > Event Logs > Logging Profiles**.
15. Click the **global-network** logging profile name.
16. Under the **Network Firewall** tab, set the IP Intelligence Publisher to **local-db-publisher** and check **Log Shun Events**.

**IP Intelligence**

Publisher	local-db-publisher
Aggregate Rate Limit	Indefinite
Log Translation Fields	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Log Shun Events	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Log RTBH Events	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Log Scrubber Events	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled

17. Click **Update** to save your changes.

18. Click the **dns-dos-profile-logging** logging profile name.
19. Check **Enabled** next to **Network Firewall**.

**Security » Event Logs : Logging Profiles » Edit Logging Profile**

**Edit Logging Profile**

**Logging Profile Properties**

Profile Name	dns-dos-profile-logging
Partition / Path	Common
Description	
Protocol Security	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Network Firewall	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Network Address Translation	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
DoS Protection	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Protocol Inspection	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Classification	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled

20. Under the **Network Firewall** tab, change the **Network Firewall** and **IP Intelligence Publisher** to **local-db-publisher** and click **Update**.

**Network Firewall**

Publisher	local-db-publisher
Aggregate Rate Limit	Indefinite
Log Rule Matches	<input type="checkbox"/> Accept <input type="checkbox"/> Drop <input type="checkbox"/> Reject
Log IP Errors	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Log TCP Errors	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Log TCP Events	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Log Translation Fields	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Always Log Region	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Storage Format	None

**IP Intelligence**

Publisher	local-db-publisher
Aggregate Rate Limit	Indefinite
Log Translation Fields	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Log Shun Events	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Log RTBH Events	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Log Scrubber Events	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled

21. Bring into view the Victim Server SSH session running the top utility to monitor CPU utilization.
22. On the Attack Server host, launch the DNS attack once again using the following syntax:  
`dnssperf -s 10.20.0.10 -d queryfile-example-current -c 20 -T 20 -l 30 -q 10000 -Q 10000`

23. You'll notice CPU utilization on the victim server begin to climb, but slowly drop. The attack host will show that queries are timing out as shown below. This is due to the BIG-IP blacklisting the bad actor.

```
[Timeout] Query timed out: msg id 3466
[Timeout] Query timed out: msg id 3467
[Timeout] Query timed out: msg id 3468
[Timeout] Query timed out: msg id 3469
[Timeout] Query timed out: msg id 3470
[Timeout] Query timed out: msg id 3471
```

24. Navigate to **Security > Event Logs > Network > IP Intelligence**. Observe the bad actor blocking mitigation logs.
25. Navigate to **Security > Event Logs > Network > Shun**. This screen shows the bad actor being added to (and later deleted from) the shun category.

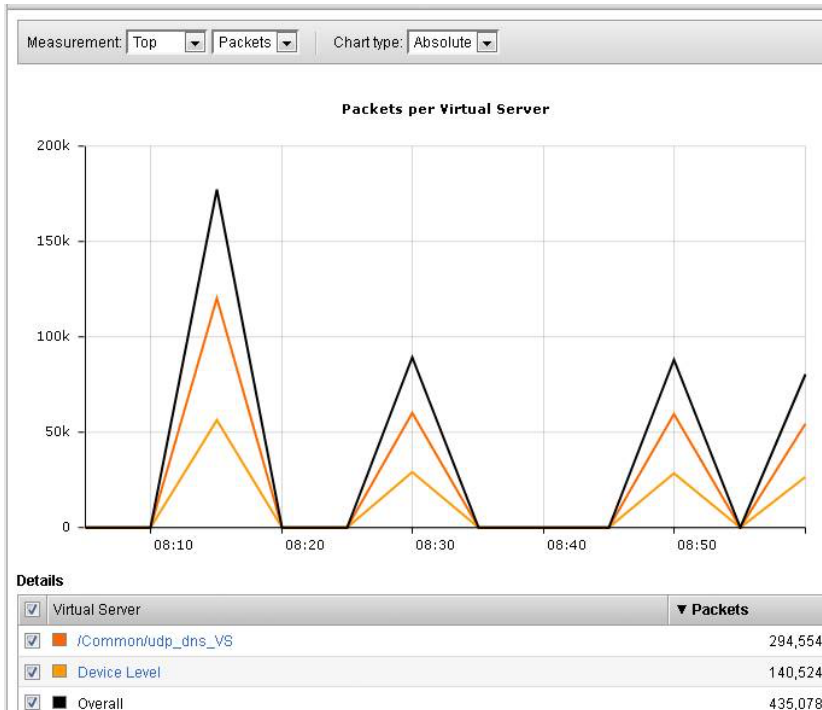
Security » Event Logs : Network : Shun

Protocol Network Network Address Translation DoS Logging Profiles

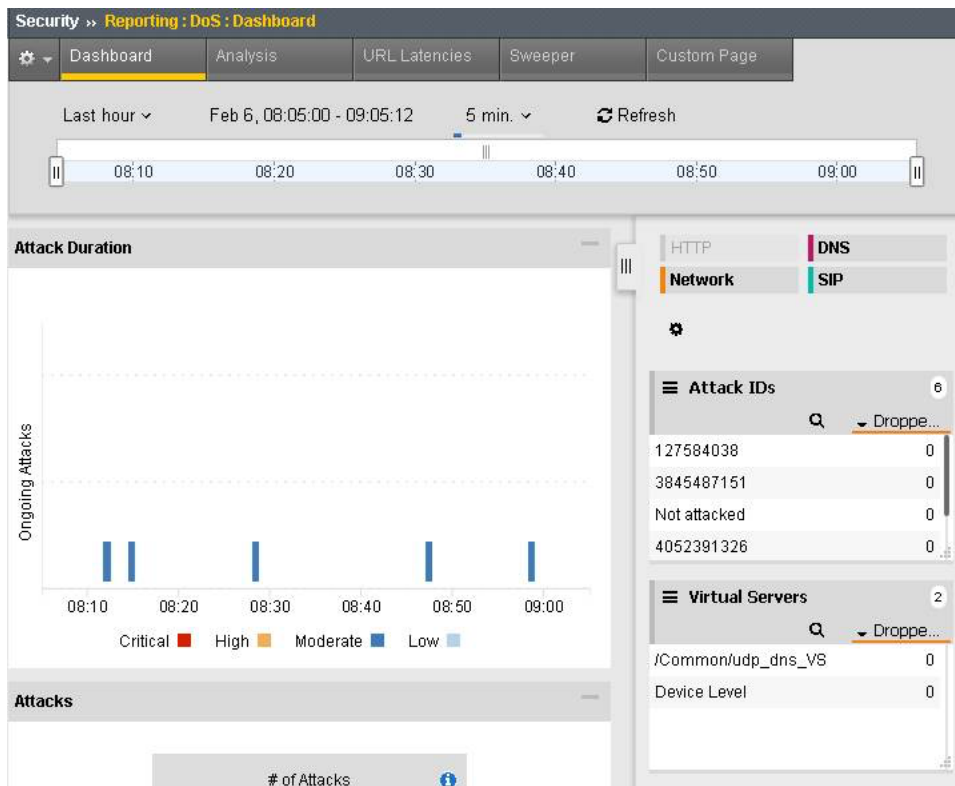
Last Hour Search Custom Search...

Time	Shun IP	Shun Category	Shun TTL	Shun Action
2018-02-06 08:59:42	10.20.0.50	/Common/denial_of_service	0	Delete
2018-02-06 08:58:42	10.20.0.50	/Common/denial_of_service	59	Add
2018-02-06 08:48:31	10.20.0.50	/Common/denial_of_service	0	Delete
2018-02-06 08:47:30	10.20.0.50	/Common/denial_of_service	60	Add

26. Navigate to **Security > Reporting > Protocol > DNS**. Change the **View By** drop-down to view various statistics around the DNS traffic and attacks.



27. Navigate to **Security > Reporting > Network > IP Intelligence**. The default view may be blank. Change the **View By** drop-down to view various statistics around the IP Intelligence handling of the attack traffic.
28. Navigate to **Security > Reporting > DoS > Dashboard** to view an overview of the DoS attacks and timeline. You can select filters in the filter pane to highlight specific attacks.



29. Finally, navigate to **Security > Reporting > DoS > Analysis**. View detailed statistics around each attack.

### Remote Triggered Black Holing

The BIG-IP supports the advertisement of bad actor(s) to upstream devices via BGP to block malicious traffic closer to the source. This is accomplished by publishing a blacklist to an external resource. This is not demonstrated in this lab.

### Silverline Mitigation

F5's cloud-based scrubbing service Silverline offers "always on" and "on demand" DDoS scrubbing that could assist in this scenario as well. This is not demonstrated in this lab.

### 3.1.3 Filtering specific DNS operations

The BIG-IP offers the ability to filter DNS query types and header opcodes to act as a DNS firewall. To demonstrate, we will block MX queries from our DNS server.

1. Open the SSH session to the attack host.
2. Perform an MX record lookup by issuing the following command:  

```
dig @10.20.0.10 MX example.com
```
3. The server doesn't have a record for this domain. This server doesn't have MX records, so those requests should be filtered

4. Navigate to **Security > Protocol Security > Security Profiles > DNS** and create a new DNS security profile with the following values, leaving unspecified attributes at their default value:
  - a. Name: dns-block-mx-query
  - b. Query Type Filter: move mx from Available to Active

Security >> Protocol Security : Security Profiles : DNS >> New Security Profile...

**Properties**

Name	dns-block-mx-query
Description	
Query Type	Exclusion
Query Type Filter	<div> <div>Active</div> <div>mx</div> <div>Available</div> <div>rp, txt, zxfr, x25, afsdb</div> </div>
Header Opcode Exclusion	<div> <div>Active</div> <div></div> <div>Available</div> <div>query</div> </div>

Cancel Repeat Finished

5. Navigate to **Local Traffic > Profiles > Services > DNS**. **NOTE:** if you are mousing over the services, DNS may not show up on the list. Select **Services** and then use the pulldown menu on services to select **DNS**.
6. Create a new DNS services profile with the following values, leaving unspecified values at their default values:
  - a. Name: dns-block-mx
  - b. DNS Traffic
    - i. DNS Security: Enabled
    - ii. DNS Security Profile Name: dns-block-mx-query

Local Traffic » Profiles : Services : DNS » New DNS Profile...

---

**General Properties**

Name	dns-block-mx
Parent Profile	dns

**Denial of Service Protection**

Rapid Response Mode	Disabled
Rapid Response Last Action	Drop

**Hardware Acceleration**

Protocol Validation	Disabled
Response Cache	Disabled

**DNS Features**

DNSSEC	Enabled
GSLB	Enabled
DNS Express	Enabled
DNS Cache	Disabled
DNS Cache Name	Select...
DNS IPv6 to IPv4	Disabled
Unhandled Query Actions	Allow
Use BIND Server on BIG-IP	Enabled

**DNS Traffic**

Zone Transfer	Disabled
DNS Security	Enabled
DNS Security Profile Name	dns-block-mx-query
Process Recursion Desired	Enabled

**Logging and Reporting**

Logging	Disabled
Logging Profile	Select...
AVR Statistics Sample Rate	<input type="checkbox"/>

Cancel Repeat Finished

7. Navigate to **Local Traffic > Virtual Servers > Virtual Server List**.
8. Click on the **udp\_dns\_VS** virtual server name.
9. In the **Configuration** section, change the view to **Advanced**.
10. Set the **DNS Profile** to **dns-block-mx**.

SMTP Profile	None
Netflow Profile	None
WebSocket Profile	None
SplitSession Client Profile	None
SplitSession Server Profile	None
DNS Profile	dns-block-mx
QoE Profile	None
GTP Profile	None
Request Adapt Profile	None
Response Adapt Profile	None
RADIUS Profile	None

11. Click **Update** to save your settings.
12. Navigate to **Security > Event Logs > Logging Profiles**.
13. Click on the **dns-dos-profile-logging** logging profile name.
14. Check **Enabled** next to **Protocol Security**.
15. In the **Protocol Security** tab, set the **DNS Security Publisher** to local-db-publisher and check all five of the request log types.

**Security » Event Logs : Logging Profiles » Edit Logging Profile**

⚙️ Edit Logging Profile

**Logging Profile Properties**

Profile Name	dns-dos-profile-logging
Partition / Path	Common
Description	
Protocol Security	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Network Firewall	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Network Address Translation	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
DoS Protection	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Protocol Inspection	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Classification	<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled

Protocol Security | Network Firewall | DoS Protection

**HTTP, FTP, and SMTP Security**

Publisher	none
-----------	------

**DNS Security**

Publisher	local-db-publisher
Log Dropped Requests	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Log Filtered Dropped Requests	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Log Malformed Requests	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Log Rejected Requests	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Log Malicious Requests	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled
Storage Format	None

16. Make sure that you click **Update** to save your settings.
17. Return to the Attack Server SSH session and re-issue the MX query command:  
dig @10.20.0.10 MX example.com
18. The query hangs as the BIG-IP is blocking the MX lookup.
19. Navigate to **Security > Event Logs > Protocol > DNS**. Observe the MX query drops.

**Security » Event Logs : Protocol : DNS**

⚙️ Protocol | Network | Network Address Translation | DoS | Logging Profiles

Source		Destination						
Port	VLAN	Address	Port	Route	Domain	DNS Query Type	DNS Query Name	Attack Type
112	/Common/outside	10.20.0.10	53	0		MX	example.com	MX Drop
112	/Common/outside	10.20.0.10	53	0		MX	example.com	MX Drop
112	/Common/outside	10.20.0.10	53	0		MX	example.com	MX Drop

**Attention:** This concludes the DNS portion of the lab. On the victim server, stop the top utility by pressing **CTRL + C**.



## 3.2 Module 2 – Detecting and Preventing System DoS and DDoS Attacks

In this lab, you will launch attacks against the BIG-IP, configure mitigation and finally review the reports and logs.

### 3.2.1 Detecting and Preventing System DoS and DDoS Attacks

#### Configure Logging

Configuring a logging destination will allow you to verify the BIG-IPs detection and mitigation of attacks, in addition to the built-in reporting.

1. In the BIG-IP web UI, navigate to **Security > DoS Protection > Device Configuration > Properties**.
2. Under **Log Publisher**, select **local-db-publisher**.
3. Click the **Commit Changes to System** button.

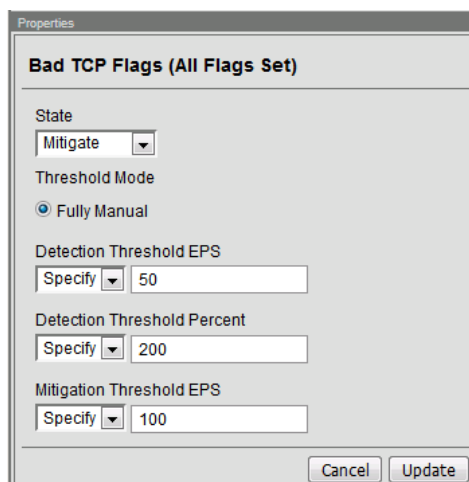
Security » DoS Protection : Device Configuration : Properties	
⚙️	DoS Overview   DoS Profiles   <b>Device Configuration</b>
<b>Properties</b>	
Log Publisher	local-db-publisher ▼
Threshold Sensitivity	Medium ▼
Eviction Policy	default-eviction-policy ▼

#### Simulating a Christmas Tree Packet Attack

In this example, we'll set the BIG-IP to detect and mitigate an attack where all flags on a TCP packet are set. This is commonly referred to as a Christmas tree packet and is intended to increase processing on in-path network devices and end hosts to the target.

We'll use the hping utility to send 25,000 packets to our server, with random source IPs to simulate a DDoS attack where multiple hosts are attacking our server. We'll set the SYN, ACK, FIN, RST, URG, PUSH, Xmas and Ymas TCP flags.

1. In the BIG-IP web UI, navigate to **Security > DoS Protection > Device Configuration > Network Security**.
2. Expand the **Bad-Header-TCP** category in the vectors list.
3. Click on the **Bad TCP Flags (All Flags Set)** vector name.
4. Configure the vector with the following parameters:
  - a. State: Mitigate
  - b. Threshold Mode: Fully Manual
  - c. Detection Threshold EPS: Specify 50
  - d. Detection Threshold Percent: Specify 200
  - e. Mitigation Threshold EPS: Specify 100



5. Click **Update** to save your changes.
6. Open the BIG-IP SSH session and scroll the ltm log in real time with the following command: `tail -f /var/log/ltm`
7. On the attack host, launch the attack by issuing the following command on the BASH prompt:  
`sudo hping3 10.20.0.10 --flood --rand-source --destport 80 -c 25000 --syn --ack --fin --rst --push --urg --xmas --ymas`
8. You'll see the BIG-IP ltm log show that the attack has been detected:

```
Feb 6 09:36:09 bigip1 err tmm[10663]: 01010252:3: A Enforced Device DOS attack
start was detected for vector Bad TCP flags (all flags set), Attack ID 411238769
1.
```

9. After approximately 60 seconds, press **CTRL+C** to stop the attack.

```
ubuntu@attackhost:~$ sudo hping3 10.20.0.10 --flood --rand-source --destport 80
-c 25000 --syn --ack --fin --rst --push --urg --xmas --ymas
HPING 10.20.0.10 (ens3 10.20.0.10): RS&FP&UX&Y set, 40 headers + 0 data bytes
hping in flood mode, no replies will be shown
^C
--- 10.20.0.10 hping statistic ---
361447 packets transmitted, 0 packets received, 100% packet loss
round-trip min/avg/max = 0.0/0.0/0.0 ms
ubuntu@attackhost:~$
```

10. Return to the BIG-IP web UI. Navigate to **Security > Event Logs > DoS > Network > Events**. Observe the log entries showing the details surrounding the attack detection and mitigation.

Security » Event Logs : DoS : Network : Events								
⚙	Protocol	Network	Network Address Translation		DoS	Logging Profiles		
Destination								
Context	Address	Port	Event	Type	Action	Attack ID	Packets In / sec	Dropp
evic			Attack Stopped	Bad TCP flags (all flags set)	None	4112387691	0	0
evic	10.20.0.10	80	Attack Sampled	Bad TCP flags (all flags set)	Drop	4112387691	597	597
evic	10.20.0.10	80	Attack Sampled	Bad TCP flags (all flags set)	Drop	4112387691	593	593
evic	10.20.0.10	80	Attack Sampled	Bad TCP flags (all flags set)	Drop	4112387691	601	601

11. Navigate to **Security > Reporting > DoS > Analysis**. Single-click on the attack ID in the filter list to the right of the charts and observe the various statistics around the attack.

## Simulating a TCP SYN DDoS Attack

In the last example, we crafted a packet that is easily identified as malicious, as its invalid. We'll now simulate an attack with traffic that could be normal, acceptable traffic. The TCP SYN flood attack will attempt to DDoS a host by sending valid TCP traffic to a host from multiple source hosts.

1. In the BIG-IP web UI, navigate to **Security > DoS Protection > Device Configuration > Network Security**.
2. Expand the **Flood** category in the vectors list.
3. Click on **TCP Syn Flood** vector name.
4. Configure the vector with the following parameters (use the lower values specified):
  - a. State: Mitigate
  - b. Threshold Mode: Fully Manual
  - c. Detection Threshold EPS: 50
  - d. Detection Threshold Percent: 200
  - e. Mitigation Threshold EPS: 100

The screenshot shows the 'Properties' window for the 'TCP SYN Flood' vector. The 'State' dropdown is set to 'Mitigate'. Under 'Threshold Mode', 'Fully Manual' is selected with a radio button. The 'Detection Threshold EPS' is set to 'Specify' with a value of '400'. The 'Detection Threshold Percent' is set to 'Specify' with a value of '500'. The 'Mitigation Threshold EPS' is set to 'Specify' with a value of '500'. There are three unchecked checkboxes: 'Simulate Auto Threshold', 'Bad Actor Detection', and 'Attacked Destination Detection'. At the bottom right are 'Cancel' and 'Update' buttons.

5. Click **Update** to save your changes.
6. Open the BIG-IP SSH session and scroll the ltm log in real time with the following command: `tail -f /var/log/ltm`
7. On the attack host, launch the attack by issuing the following command on the BASH prompt: `sudo hping3 10.20.0.10 -flood -rand-source -destport 80 -syn -d 120 -w 64`
8. After about 60 seconds, stop the flood attack by pressing **CTRL + C**.
9. Return to the BIG-IP web UI and navigate to **Security > Event Logs > DoS > Network > Events**. Observe the log entries showing the details surrounding the attack detection and mitigation.
10. Navigate to **Security > Reporting > DoS > Dashboard** to view an overview of the DoS attacks and timeline. You can select filters in the filter pane to highlight the specific attack.

11. Finally, navigate to **Security > Reporting > DoS > Analysis**. View detailed statistics around the attack.

### 3.2.2 Preventing Global DoS Sweep and Flood Attacks

In the last section, the focus was on attacks originating from various hosts. In this section, we will focus on mitigating flood and sweep attacks from a single host.

#### Single Endpoint Sweep

The single endpoint sweep is an attempt for an attacker to send traffic across a range of ports on the target server, typically to scan for open ports.

1. In the BIG-IP web UI, navigate to **Security > DoS Protection > Device Configuration > Network Security**.
2. Expand the **Single-Endpoint** category in the vectors list.
3. Click on **Single Endpoint Sweep** vector name.
4. Configure the vector with the following parameters:
  - a. State: Mitigate
  - b. Threshold Mode: Fully Manual
  - c. Detection Threshold EPS: 150
  - d. Mitigation Threshold EPS: 200
  - e. Add Source Address to Category: Checked
  - f. Category Name: denial\_of\_service
  - g. Sustained Attack Detection Time: 10 seconds
  - h. Category Duration Time: 60 seconds
  - i. Packet Type: Move All IPv4 to Selected

5. Click **Update** to save your changes.
6. Navigate to **Security > Network Firewall > IP Intelligence > Policies**.
7. In the **Global Policy** section, change the **IP Intelligence Policy** to **ip-intelligence**.

8. Click **Update**.
9. Click on the **ip-intelligence** policy in the policy list below.
10. Create a new Blacklist Matching Policy in the IP Intelligence Policy Properties section with the following attributes, leaving unspecified attributes with their default values:

- a. Blacklist Category: denial-of-service
- b. Action: drop
- c. Log Blacklist Category Matches: Yes

11. Click **Add** to add the new Blacklist Matching Policy.

The screenshot shows the configuration page for the 'ip-intelligence' policy. The 'General Properties' section shows the name 'ip-intelligence' and partition 'Common'. The 'IP Intelligence Policy Properties' section includes a 'Feed Lists' section with a '+', a 'Default Action' dropdown set to 'Drop', and 'Default Log Actions' for 'Log Whitelist Overrides' (No) and 'Log Blacklist Category Matches' (No). The 'Blacklist Matching Policy' section contains several dropdowns: 'Blacklist Category' (denial\_of\_service), 'Action' (Drop), 'Log Blacklist Category Matches' (Yes), 'Log Whitelist Overrides' (Use Policy Default), and 'Match Override' (Match Source). Below these are 'Add' and 'Replace' buttons. At the bottom, there is a table with headers: 'Blacklist Category', 'Action', 'Log Blacklist Category Matches', 'Log Whitelist Overrides', and 'Match Override'. The table is currently empty with the message 'No data available in table'. 'Delete' and 'Update' buttons are at the bottom of the form.

12. Click **Update** to save changes to the ip-intelligence policy.
13. Open the BIG-IP SSH session and scroll the ltm log in real time with the following command: `tail -f /var/log/ltm`
14. On the victim server, start a packet capture with an SSH filter by issuing `sudo tcpdump -nn not port 22`
15. On the attack host, launch the attack by issuing the following command on the BASH prompt:  
`sudo hping3 10.20.0.10 -flood -scan 1-65535 -d 128 -w 64 -syn`
16. You will see the scan find a few open ports on the server, and the server will show the inbound sweep traffic. However, you will notice that the traffic to the server stops after a short time (10 seconds, the configured sustained attack detection time.) Leave the test running.
17. After approximately 60 seconds, sweep traffic will return to the host. This is because the IP Intelligence categorization of the attack host has expired. After 10 seconds of traffic, the bad actor is again blacklisted for another 60 seconds.
18. Stop the sweep attack on the attack host by pressing **CTRL + C**.
19. Return to the BIG-IP web UI and navigate to **Security > Event Logs > DoS > Network > Events**. Observe the log entries showing the details surrounding the attack detection and mitigation.
20. Navigate to **Security > Event Logs > Network > IP Intelligence**. Observe the log entries showing the mitigation of the sweep attack via the ip-intelligence policy.

21. Navigate to **Security > Event Logs > Network > Shun**. Observe the log entries showing the blacklist adds and deletes.
22. Navigate to **Security > Reporting > Network > IP Intelligence**. Observe the statistics showing the sweep attack and mitigation. Change the **View By** drop-down to view the varying statistics.
23. Navigate to **Security > Reporting > DoS > Dashboard** to view an overview of the DoS attacks and timeline. You can select filters in the filter pane to highlight the specific attack.
24. Finally, navigate to **Security > Reporting > DoS > Analysis**. View detailed statistics around the attack.

### Single Endpoint Flood

The single endpoint flood attack is an attempt for an attacker to send a flood of traffic to a host in hopes of overwhelming a service to a point of failure. In this example, we'll flood the target server with ICMP packets.

1. In the BIG-IP web UI, navigate to **Security > DoS Protection > Device Configuration > Network Security**.
2. Expand the **Single-Endpoint** category in the vectors list.
3. Click on **Single Endpoint Flood** vector name.
4. Configure the vector with the following parameters:
  - a. State: Mitigate
  - b. Threshold Mode: Fully Manual
  - c. Detection Threshold EPS: 150
  - d. Mitigation Threshold EPS: 200
  - e. Add Destination Address to Category: Checked
  - f. Category Name: denial\_of\_service
  - g. Sustained Attack Detection Time: 10 seconds
  - h. Category Duration Time: 60 seconds
  - i. Packet Type: Move Any ICMP (IPv4) to Selected

**Single Endpoint Flood**

State  
Mitigate

Threshold Mode  
☒ Fully Manual

Detection Threshold EPS  
Specify 150

Mitigation Threshold EPS  
Specify 200

☒ Add Destination Address to Category

Category Name denial\_of\_service

Sustained Attack Detection Time  
10 seconds

Category Duration Time  
60 seconds

☐ Allow External Advertisement

Packet Type

Selected	Available
Any ICMP (IPv4)	All IPv4
	All IPv6
	Any ICMP (IPv6)
	Any Other IPv4 Protocol
	Any Other IPv6 Protocol
	Atomic Fragment
	Bad Packet
	DNS A Query
	DNS AAAA Query
	DNS ANY Query
	DNS AXFR Query
	DNS CNAME Query
	DNS IXFR Query
	DNS MX Query
	DNS NS Query

Cancel Update

5. Click **Update** to save your changes.
6. Open the BIG-IP SSH session and scroll the ltm log in real time with the following command: `tail -f /var/log/ltm`
7. We'll run a packet capture on the victim server to gauge the incoming traffic. On the victim server, issue the following command: `sudo tcpdump -nn not port 22`
8. On the attack host, launch the attack by issuing the following command on the BASH prompt:  
`sudo hping3 10.20.0.10 -faster -c 25000 -icmp`
9. The attack host will begin flooding the victim server with ICMP packets. However, you will notice that the traffic to the server stops after a short time (10 seconds, the configured sustained attack detection time.)
10. After approximately 60 seconds, run the attack again. ICMP traffic will return to the host. This is because the IP Intelligence categorization of the attack host has expired.
11. Return to the BIG-IP web UI.
12. Navigate to **Security > Event Logs > DoS > Network > Events**. Observe the log entries showing the details surrounding the attack detection and mitigation.
13. Navigate to **Security > Event Logs > Network > IP Intelligence**. Observe the log entries showing



the mitigation of the sweep attack via the ip-intelligence policy.

14. Navigate to **Security > Reporting > Network > IP Intelligence**. Observe the statistics showing the sweep attack and mitigation.
15. Navigate to **Security > Reporting > DoS > Dashboard** to view an overview of the DoS attacks and timeline. You can select filters in the filter pane to highlight the specific attack.
16. Finally, navigate to **Security > Reporting > DoS > Analysis**. View detailed statistics around the attack.

### 3.2.3 Conclusion

Congratulations on finishing the lab!

This lab did not cover auto thresholds for protections, nor did we test dynamic signatures. Testing auto thresholds requires a more real-world environment. For suggested testing guidelines for auto thresholds and dynamic signatures, engage your F5 account team.

This concludes the DoS/DDoS portion of the lab. You may now close all sessions, log out of the jump host and log out of the training portal.

Thank you for your time.

## 3.3 Appendix

### 3.3.1 DNS Security vectors

The system tracks and rate limits all UDP DNS packets (excluding those whitelisted). TCP DNS packets are also tracked but only for the DNS requests that reach a virtual server that has a DNS profile associated with it.

**NOTE: This information applies to 13.1.0.1.**

For vectors where VLAN is <tunable>, you can tune this value in tmsh: `modify sys db dos.dnsvlan value`, where value is 0-4094.

DoS category	Attack name	Dos vector name	Information	Hardware accelerated
DNS	DNS A Query	dns-a-query	DNS Query, DNS Qtype is A_QRY, VLAN is <tunable> in tmsh usingdos.dnsvlan.	Yes
DNS	DNS AAAA Query	dns-aaaa-query	DNS Query, DNS Qtype is AAAA, VLAN is <tunable> in tmsh usingdos.dnsvlan.	Yes
DNS	DNS Any Query	dns-any-query	DNS Query, DNS Qtype is ANY_QRY, VLAN is <tunable> in tmsh usingdos.dnsvlan.	Yes
DNS	DNS AXFR Query	dns-axfr-query	DNS Query, DNS Qtype is AXFR, VLAN is <tunable> in tmsh usingdos.dnsvlan.	Yes
DNS	DNS CNAME Query	dns-cname-query	DNS Query, DNS Qtype is CNAME, VLAN is <tunable> in tmsh usingdos.dnsvlan.	Yes
DNS	DNS IXFR Query	dns-ixfr-query	DNS Query, DNS Qtype is IXFR, VLAN is <tunable> in tmsh usingdos.dnsvlan.	Yes
DNS	DNS Malformed	dns-malformed	Malformed DNS packet	Yes
DNS	DNS MX Query	dns-mx-query	DNS Query, DNS Qtype is MX, VLAN is <tunable> in tmsh usingdos.dnsvlan.	Yes
DNS	DNS NS Query	dns-ns-query	DNS Query, DNS Qtype is NS, VLAN is <tunable> in tmsh usingdos.dnsvlan.	Yes
DNS	DNS OTHER Query	dns-other-query	DNS Query, DNS Qtype is OTHER, VLAN is <tunable> in tmsh usingdos.dnsvlan.	Yes
DNS	DNS PTR Query	dns-ptr-query	DNS Query, DNS Qtype is PTR, VLAN is <tunable> in tmsh usingdos.dnsvlan.	Yes
DNS	DNS Question Items != 1	dns-qdcount-limit	DNS Query, DNS Qtype is ANY_QRY, the DNS query has more than one question.	Yes
DNS	DNS Response Flood	dns-response-flood	UDP DNS Port=53, packet and DNS header flags bit 15 is 1 (response), VLAN is <tunable> in tmsh usingdos.dnsvlan.	Yes
DNS	DNS SOA Query	dns-soa-query	DNS Query, DNS Qtype is SOA_QRY, VLAN is <tunable> in tmsh usingdos.dnsvlan.	Yes
DNS	DNS SRV Query	dns-srv-query	DNS Query, DNS Qtype is SRV, VLAN is <tunable> in tmsh usingdos.dnsvlan.	Yes
DNS	DNS TXT Query	dns-txt-query	DNS Query, DNS Qtype is TXT, VLAN is <tunable> in tmsh usingdos.dnsvlan.	Yes

### 3.3.2 Network Security Vectors

DoS category	Attack name	Dos vector name	Information	Hardware accelerated
Flood	Ethernet Broadcast Packet	ether-brdcst-pkt	Ethernet broadcast packet flood	Yes

Continued on next page

Table 1 – continued from previous page

DoS category	Attack name	Dos vector name	Information	Hardware accelerated
Flood	Ethernet Multicast Packet	ether-multicast-pkt	Ethernet destination is not broadcast, but is multicast	Yes
Flood	ARP Flood	arp-flood	ARP packet flood	Yes
Flood	IP Fragment Flood	ip-frag-flood	Fragmented packet flood with IPv4	Yes
Flood	IGMP Flood	igmp-flood	Flood with IGMP packets (IPv4 packets with IP protocol number 2)	Yes
Flood	Routing Header Type 0	routing-header-type-0	Routing header type zero is present in flood packets	Yes
Flood	IPv6 Fragment Flood	ipv6-frag-flood	Fragmented packet flood with IPv6	No
Flood	IGMP Fragment Flood	igmp-frag-flood	Fragmented packet flood with IGMP protocol	Yes
Flood	TCP SYN Flood	tcp-syn-flood	TCP SYN flood	Yes
Flood	TCP SYN ACK Flood	tcp-synack-flood	TCP SYN/ACK flood	Yes
Flood	TCP RST Flood	tcp-rst-flood	TCP RST flood	Yes
Flood	TCP Window Size	tcp-window-size	The TCP window size in packets is above the maximum. To tune this value, in tmsh: modify sys db dos.tcplowwindow-size value, where value is <=128.	Yes
Flood	ICMPv4 Flood	icmpv4-flood	Flood with ICMP v4 packets	Yes
Flood	ICMPv6 Flood	icmpv6-flood	Flood with ICMP v6 packets	Yes
Flood	UDP Flood	udp-flood	UDP flood attack	Yes

Continued on next page

Table 1 – continued from previous page

DoS category	Attack name	Dos vector name	Information	Hardware accelerated
Flood	TCP SYN Over-size	tcp-syn-oversize	Detects TCP data SYN packets larger than the maximum specified by the dos.maxsynsize parameter. To tune this value, in tmsh: modify sys db dos.maxsynsize value. The default size is 64 and the maximum allowable value is 9216.	Yes
Flood	TCP Push Flood	tcp-push-flood	TCP push packet flood	Yes
Flood	TCP BADACK Flood	tcp-ack-flood	TCP ACK packet flood	No
Bad Header - L2	Ethernet MAC Source Address == Destination Address	ether-mac-sa-eq-da	Ethernet MAC source address equals the destination address	Yes
Bad Header - IPv4	Bad IP Version	bad-ver	The IPv4 address version in the IP header is not 4	Yes
Bad Header - IPv4	Header Length Too Short	hdr-len-too-short	IPv4 header length is less than 20 bytes	Yes
Bad Header - IPv4	Header Length > L2 Length	hdr-len-gt-l2-len	No room in layer 2 packet for IP header (including options) for IPv4 address	Yes
Bad Header - IPv4	L2 Length >> IP Length	l2-len-ggt-ip-len	Layer 2 packet length is much greater than the payload length in an IPv4 address header and the layer 2 length is greater than the minimum packet size	Yes
Bad Header - IPv4	No L4	no-l4	No layer 4 payload for IPv4 address	Yes
Bad Header - IPv4	Bad IP TTL Value	bad-ttl-val	Time-to-live equals zero for an IPv4 address	Yes

Continued on next page

Table 1 – continued from previous page

DoS category	Attack name	Dos vector name	Information	Hardware accelerated
Bad Header - IPv4	TTL <= <tunable>	tll-leq-one	An IP packet with a destination that is not multicast and that has a TTL greater than 0 and less than or equal to a tunable value, which is 1 by default. To tune this value, in tmsh: modify sys db dos.iplowtlli value, where value is 1-4.	Yes
Bad Header - IPv4	IP Error Checksum	ip-err-chksum	The header checksum is not correct	Yes
Bad Header - IPv4	IP Option Frames	ip-opt-frames	IPv4 address packet with option.db variable tm.acceptipsourceroute must be enabled to receive IP options.	Yes
Bad Header - IPv4	Bad Source	ip-bad-src	The IPv4 source IP = 255.255.255.255 or 0xe0000000U	Yes
Bad Header - IPv4	IP Option Illegal Length	bad-ip-opt	Option present with illegal length	No
Bad Header - IPv4	Unknown Option Type	unk-ipopt-type	Unknown IP option type	No
Bad Header - IGMP	Bad IGMP Frame	bad-igmp-frame	IPv4 IGMP packets should have a header >= 8 bytes. Bits 7:0 should be either 0x11, 0x12, 0x16, 0x22 or 0x17, or else the header is bad. Bits 15:8 should be non-zero only if bits 7:0 are 0x11, or else the header is bad.	Yes
Fragmentation	IP Fragment Too Small	ip-short-frag	IPv4 short fragment error	Yes
Fragmentation	IPv6 Fragment Too Small	ipv6-short-frag	IPv6 short fragment error	Yes

Continued on next page

Table 1 – continued from previous page

DoS category	Attack name	Dos vector name	Information	Hardware accelerated
Fragmentation	IPv6 Atomic Fragment	ipv6-atomic-frag	IPv6 Frag header present with M=0 and FragOffset =0	Yes
Fragmentation	ICMP Fragment	icmp-frag	ICMP fragment flood	Yes
Fragmentation	IP Fragment Error	ip-other-frag	Other IPv4 fragment error	Yes
Fragmentation	IPv6 Fragment Error	ipv6-other-frag	Other IPv6 fragment error	Yes
Fragmentation	IP Fragment Overlap	ip-overlap-frag	IPv4 overlapping fragment error	No
Fragmentation	IPv6 Fragment Overlap	ipv6-overlap-frag	IPv6 overlapping fragment error	No
Bad Header - IPv6	Bad IPv6 Version	bad-ipv6-ver	The IPv6 address version in the IP header is not 6	Yes
Bad Header - IPv6	IPv6 Length > L2 Length	ipv6-len-gt-l2-len	IPv6 address length is greater than the layer 2 length	Yes
Bad Header - IPv6	Payload Length < L2 Length	payload-len-ls-l2-len	Specified IPv6 payload length is less than the L2 packet length	Yes
Bad Header - IPv6	Too Many Extension Headers	too-many-ext-hdrs	For an IPv6 address, there are more than <tunable> extended headers (the default is 4). To tune this value, in tmsh: modify sys db dos.maxipv6exthdrs value, where value is 0-15.	Yes
Bad Header - IPv6	IPv6 duplicate extension headers	dup-ext-hdr	An extension header should occur only once in an IPv6 packet, except for the Destination Options extension header	Yes

Continued on next page

Table 1 – continued from previous page

DoS category	Attack name	Dos vector name	Information	Hardware accelerated
Bad Header - IPv6	IPv6 extension header too large	ext-hdr-too-large	An extension header is too large. To tune this value, in tmsh: modify sys db dos.maxipv6extsize value, where value is 0-1024.	Yes
Bad Header - IPv6	No L4 (Extended Headers Go To Or Past End of Frame)	l4-ext-hdrs-go-end	Extended headers go to the end or past the end of the L4 frame	Yes
Bad Header - IPv6	Bad IPV6 Hop Count	bad-ipv6-hop-cnt	Both the terminated (cnt=0) and forwarding packet (cnt=1) counts are bad	Yes
Bad Header - IPv6	IPv6 hop count <= <tunable>	hop-cnt-leq-one	The IPv6 extended header hop count is less than or equal to <tunable>. To tune this value, in tmsh: modify sys db dos.ipv6lowhopcnt value, where value is 1-4.	Yes
Bad Header - IPv6	IPv6 Extended Header Frames	ipv6-ext-hdr-frames	IPv6 address contains extended header frames	Yes
Bad Header - IPv6	IPv6 extended headers wrong order	bad-ext-hdr-order	Extension headers in the IPv6 header are in the wrong order	Yes
Bad Header - IPv6	Bad IPv6 Addr	ipv6-bad-src	IPv6 source IP = 0xff00::	Yes
Bad Header - IPv6	IPv4 Mapped IPv6	ipv4-mapped-ipv6	IPv4 address is in the lowest 32 bits of an IPv6 address.	Yes
Bad Header - TCP	TCP Header Length Too Short (Length < 5)	tcp-hdr-len-too-short	The Data Offset value in the TCP header is less than five 32-bit words	Yes
Bad Header - TCP	TCP Header Length > L2 Length	tcp-hdr-len-gt-l2-len		Yes

Continued on next page

Table 1 – continued from previous page

DoS category	Attack name	Dos vector name	Information	Hardware accelerated
Bad Header - TCP	Unknown TCP Option Type	unk-tcp-opt-type	Unknown TCP option type	Yes
Bad Header - TCP	Option Present With Illegal Length	opt-present-with-illegal-len	Option present with illegal length	Yes
Bad Header - TCP	TCP Option Overruns TCP Header	tcp-opt-overruns-tcp-hdr	The TCP option bits overrun the TCP header	Yes
Bad Header - TCP	Bad TCP Checksum	bad-tcp-chksum	The TCP checksum does not match	Yes
Bad Header - TCP	Bad TCP Flags (All Flags Set)	bad-tcp-flags-all-set	Bad TCP flags (all flags set)	Yes
Bad Header - TCP	Bad TCP Flags (All Cleared)	bad-tcp-flags-all-clr	Bad TCP flags (all cleared and SEQ#=0)	Yes
Bad Header - TCP	SYN & FIN Set	syn-and-fin-set	Bad TCP flags (SYN and FIN set)	Yes
Bad Header - TCP	FIN Only Set	fin-only-set	Bad TCP flags (only FIN is set)	Yes
Bad Header - TCP	TCP Flags - Bad URG	tcp-bad-urg	Packet contains a bad URG flag, this is likely malicious	Yes
Bad Header - ICMP	Bad ICMP Checksum	bad-icmp-chksum	An ICMP frame checksum is bad. Reuse the TCP or UDP checksum bits in the packet	Yes

Continued on next page



Table 1 – continued from previous page

DoS category	Attack name	Dos vector name	Information	Hardware accelerated
Bad Header - ICMP	Bad ICMP Frame	bad-icmp-frame	<p>The ICMP frame is either the wrong size, or not of one of the valid IPv4 or IPv6 types. Valid IPv4 types:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0 Echo Reply</li> <li>• 3 Destination Unreachable</li> <li>• 4 Source Quench</li> <li>• 5 Redirect</li> <li>• 8 Echo</li> <li>• 11 Time Exceeded</li> <li>• 12 Parameter Problem</li> <li>• 13 Timestamp</li> <li>• 14 Timestamp Reply</li> <li>• 15 Information Request</li> <li>• 16 Information Reply</li> <li>• 17 Address Mask Request</li> <li>• 18 Address Mask Reply</li> </ul> <p>Valid IPv6 types:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 1 Destination Unreachable</li> <li>• 2 Packet Too Big</li> <li>• 3 Time Exceeded</li> <li>• 4 Parameter Problem</li> <li>• 128 Echo Request</li> <li>• 129 Echo Reply</li> </ul>	Yes
3.3. Appendix				203

Table 1 – continued from previous page

DoS category	Attack name	Dos vector name	Information	Hardware accelerated
Bad Header - ICMP	ICMP Frame Too Large	icmp-frame-too-large	The ICMP frame exceeds the declared IP data length or the maximum datagram length. To tune this value, in tmsh: modify sys db dos.maxicmpframesize value, where value is <=65515.	Yes
Bad Header - UDP	Bad UDP Header (UDP Length > IP Length or L2 Length)	bad-udp-hdr	UDP length is greater than IP length or layer 2 length	Yes
Bad Header - UDP	Bad UDP Checksum	bad-udp-chksum	The UDP checksum is not correct	Yes
Other	Host Unreachable	host-unreachable	Host unreachable error	Yes
Other	TIDCMP	tidcmp	ICMP source quench attack	Yes
Other	LAND Attack	land-attack	Source IP equals destination IP address	Yes
Other	IP Unknown protocol	ip-unk-prot	Unknown IP protocol	No
Other	TCP Half Open	tcp-half-open	The number of new or untrusted TCP connections that can be established. Overrides the Global SYN Check threshold in Configuration > Local Traffic > General.	No
Other	IP uncommon proto	ip-uncommon-proto	Sets thresholds for and tracks packets containing IP protocols considered to be uncommon. By default, all IP protocols other than TCP, UDP, ICMP, IPV6-ICMP, and SCTP are on the IP uncommon protocol list.	Yes

Continued on next page

Table 1 – continued from previous page

DoS category	Attack name	Dos vector name	Information	Hardware accelerated
Bad Header - DNS	DNS Oversize	dns-oversize	Detects oversized DNS headers. To tune this value, in tmsh: modify sys db dos.maxdnssize value, where value is 256-8192.	Yes
Single Endpoint	Single Endpoint Sweep	sweep	Sweep on a single endpoint. You can configure packet types to check for, and packets per second for both detection and rate limiting.	No
Single Endpoint	Single Endpoint Flood	flood	Flood to a single endpoint. You can configure packet types to check for, and packets per second for both detection and rate limiting.	No
Bad Header-SCTP	Bad SCTP Checksum	bad-sctp-checksum	Bad SCTP packet checksum	No



## Flowmon Integrated Out-of-path DDoS Solution

### 4.1 Getting Started

Please follow the instructions provided by the instructor to start your lab and access your jump host.

---

**Note:** All work for this lab will be performed exclusively from the Windows jump host. No installation or interaction with your local system is required.

---

#### 4.1.1 Lab Topology

The following components have been included in your lab environment:

- 1 x F5 BIG-IP AFM VE (v13.1.0.6)
- 2 x vyOS routers (v1.1.8)
- 1 x Flowmon Collector (v9.01.04)/DDoS Defender (v4.01.00)
- 1 x Webserver (Ubuntu 16.04)
- 1 x Jump host (Windows 7)
- 1 x Attacker (Ubuntu 16.04)

#### Lab Components

The following table lists VLANs, IP Addresses and Credentials for all components:

Component	VLAN/IP Address(es)	Connection Type, Credentials
Jumphost	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Management:</b> 10.1.1.199</li> <li>• <b>Users:</b> 10.1.10.30</li> <li>• <b>Internal:</b> 10.1.20.30</li> <li>• <b>Servers:</b> 10.1.30.30</li> </ul>	RDP external_user/P@ssw0rd!
BIG-IP AFM	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Management:</b> 10.1.1.7</li> <li>• <b>Internal:</b> 10.1.20.245</li> </ul>	TMUI admin/admin
Flowmon Col-lector/DDoS Defender	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Management:</b> 10.1.1.9</li> <li>• <b>Internal:</b> 10.1.20.10</li> </ul>	TMUI admin/admin
Router 1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Management:</b> 10.1.1.10</li> <li>• <b>Users:</b> 10.1.10.243</li> <li>• <b>Internal:</b> 10.1.20.243</li> </ul>	ssh vyos/vyos
Router 2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Management:</b> 10.1.1.11</li> <li>• <b>Users:</b> 10.1.10.244</li> <li>• <b>Internal:</b> 10.1.20.244</li> </ul>	ssh vyos/vyos
Attacker	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Management:</b> 10.1.1.4</li> <li>• <b>Users:</b> 10.1.10.100</li> </ul>	ssh f5admin/f5admin
Webserver	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Management:</b> 10.1.1.6</li> <li>• <b>Servers:</b> 10.1.30.252</li> </ul>	ssh f5admin/f5admin

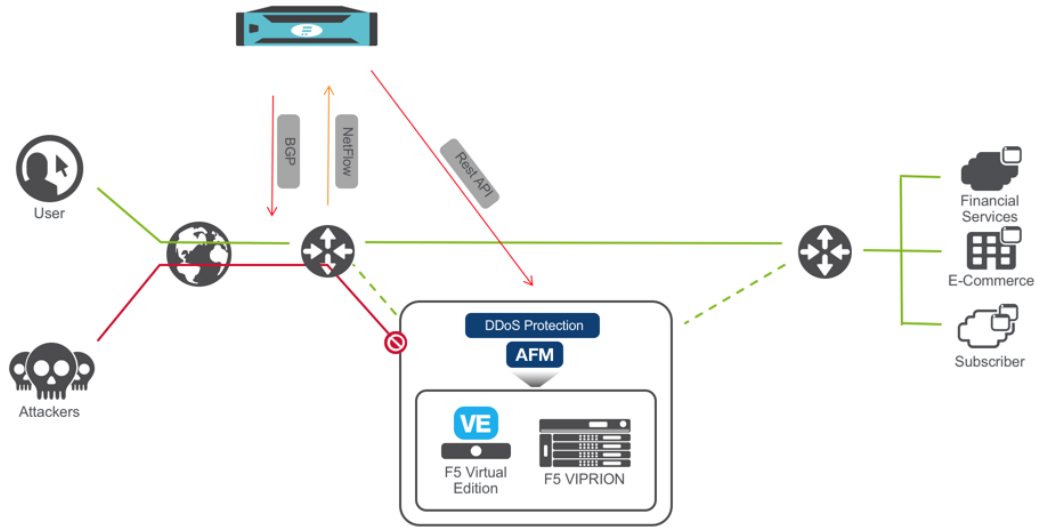
## 4.2 Module – Deployment use case and Lab diagram

In this module you will learn about common use-case for AFM/DHD + Flowmon out-of-path DDoS protection solution and explore Lab diagram.

### 4.2.1 Deployment use case

A Joint F5 + Flowmon solution is deployed “out-of-path” and provides an out-of-band DDoS mitigation of L3-4 volumetric DDoS attacks. It’s a simple and convenient solution that leverages the existing IT infrastructure to provide traffic flow information.

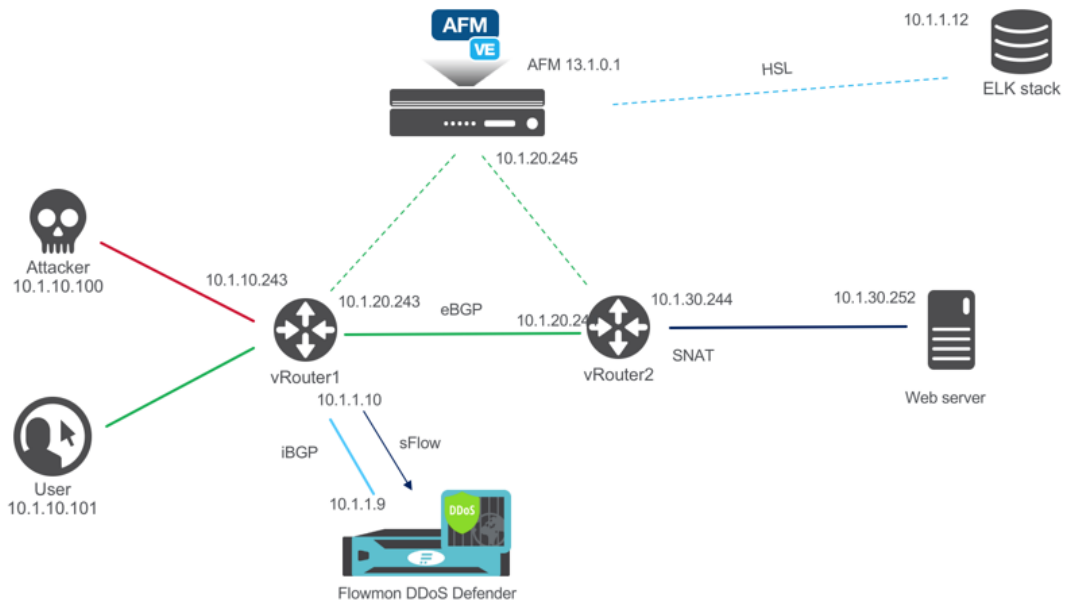
Flowmon Collector appliance receives NetFlow/sFlow/IPFIX from edge routers while Flowmon DDoS Defender uses i/eBGP/Flowspec to route the traffic to F5 DHD/AFM appliance. F5 DHD/AFM DDoS profile, VS and other parameters provisioned dynamically through iControl REST.



*Pic.1 Solution Diagram*

#### 4.2.2 Lab blueprint setup

Lab blueprint is deployed in Oracle Ravello cloud with access from F5 UDF portal. All Flowmon elements are pre-configured, F5 AFM VE resources are provisioned and network is configured.



*Pic.2 Lab blueprint*

### 4.2.3 Licensing

BIG-IP is licensed automatically.

Evaluation license has been applied to Flowmon Collector/DDoS Defender. Please contact Lab admin if there are issues with any lab elements.

### 4.2.4 Other considerations

---

**Note:** Router1 is configured to export sFlow with sampling rate of 1

---

---

**Note:** Learn about sFlow:

<https://sflow.org>

---

## 4.3 Module – DDoS Attack

In this module you will prepare for and launch a SYN flood DoS attack. You will need an active RDP connection to a Linux Jumphost to perform all necessary prerequisites

### 4.3.1 Prepare traffic visualization and monitoring

- Connect to Windows jumphost using RDP
- Open SSH connections to Router1 and Router2
- **Verify Router1 BGP configuration. Protected subnet 10.1.30.0/24 should have a Next Hop defined as Router2**

```
show ip bgp
```

```
vyos@vrouter1:~$ show ip bgp
BGP table version is 0, local router ID is 10.1.10.243
Status codes: s suppressed, d damped, h history, * valid, > best, i - internal,
               r RIB-failure, S Stale, R Removed
Origin codes: i - IGP, e - EGP, ? - incomplete

   Network        Next Hop        Metric LocPrf Weight Path
*> 10.1.10.0/24    0.0.0.0          1         32768 i
* 10.1.30.0/24    10.1.20.244      1           0 3 2 i
*>                 10.1.20.244      1           0 2 i

Total number of prefixes 2
```

- Start interface monitoring in Router1 and Router2 `monitor interfaces ethernet`



```
[vyos@vrouter1:~$ monitor interfaces ethernet
```

interface: eth1 at vrouter1					
#	Interface	RX Rate	RX #	TX Rate	TX #
vrouter1 (source: local)					
0	eth0	66.00B	1	417.00B	2
1	eth1	0.00B	0	0.00B	0
2	eth2	0.00B	0	0.00B	0

RX

B

150.00

125.00

100.00

75.00

50.00

25.00

1 5 10 15 20 25 30 35 40 45 50 55 60 s

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

[-0.03s]

TX

B

150.00

125.00

100.00

75.00

50.00

25.00

1 5 10 15 20 25 30 35 40 45 50 55 60 s

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

[-0.03s]

Press d to enable detailed statistics

^ prev interface, v next interface, <- prev node, -> next node, ? help

```
[vyos@vrouter2:~$ monitor interfaces ethernet
```

interface: eth1 at vrouter2					
#	Interface	RX Rate	RX #	TX Rate	TX #
vrouter2 (source: local)					
0	eth0	65.00B	0	361.00B	0
1	eth1	0.00B	0	0.00B	0
2	eth3	0.00B	0	0.00B	0

RX

B

84.00

70.00

56.00

42.00

28.00

14.00

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

55

60

s

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

.....\*

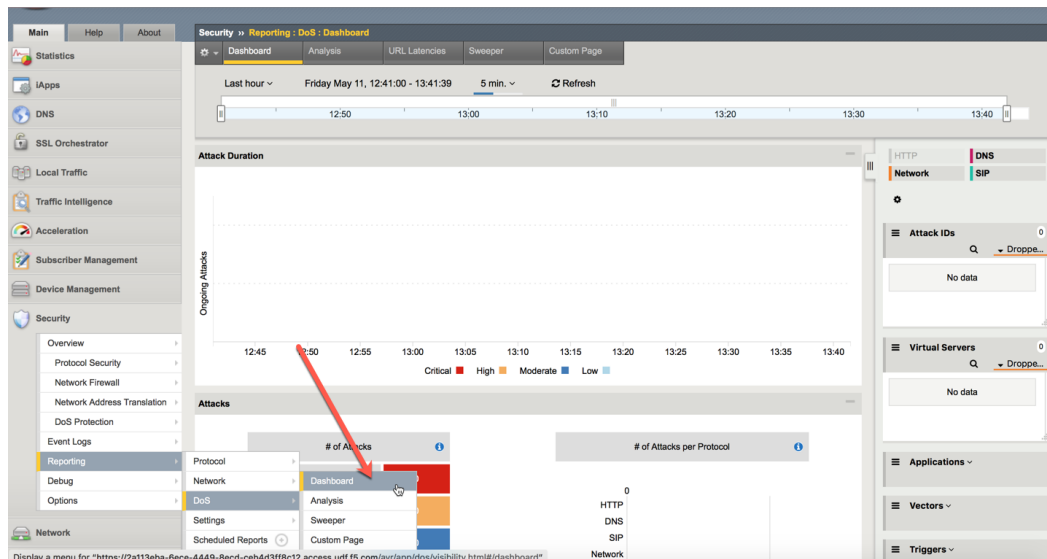
.....\*

<

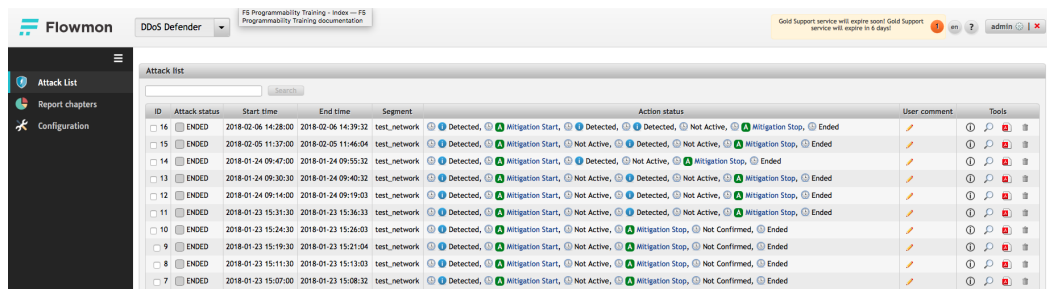
- Select *eth1* and press *g* to enable graphical statistics

**Note:** You may need to expand terminal window for graphs to appear

- Open Web Browser and click on *BIG-IP AFM* bookmark, then login into BIG-IP TMUI using *admin* credentials
- Open **DoS Visibility Dashboard** in AFM TMUI



- In a new Browser tab click on *Flowmon Web interface* bookmark. Once Flowmon main menu opens, click on *Flowmon DDoS Defender* icon and login using `admin` credentials
- Open **Attack List** in Flowmon DDoS Defender WebUI



**Note:** Disregard any active alarms Flowmon may show in the upper right screen corner. These are artifacts of this lab environment

### 4.3.2 Initiate DDoS attack

#### Run SYN flood (hping3) from Attacker VM

- Click on **Attacker SSH** icon to open Attacker VM ssh session
- From Attacker VM run SYN flood towards Web server

```
./syn_flood
[f5admin@attacker:~$ ./syn_flood
[sudo] password for f5admin:
HPING 10.1.30.252 (ens3 10.1.30.252): S set, 40 headers + 1200 data bytes
hping in flood mode, no replies will be shown
```

- Observe traffic growth in both Router1 and Router2. After **15-45 seconds** traffic will drop in Router2 due to DDoS detection and mitigation start

Interface: eth1 at vrouter1						Interface: eth1 at vrouter2					
bmon 2.0.1						bmon 2.0.1					
#	Interface	RX Rate	RX #	TX Rate	TX #	#	Interface	RX Rate	RX #	TX Rate	TX #
vrouter1 (source: local)						vrouter2 (source: local)					
0	eth0	66.00B	1	13.34KiB	19	0	eth0	65.00B	0	449.00B	0
1	eth1	518.00B	0	3.47MiB	2903	1	eth1	12.74KiB	18	0.00B	0
2	eth2	3.73MiB	3116	0.00B	0	2	eth3	0.00B	0	12.74KiB	18
RX 8						RX M1B					
714.00 .....*						3.59 .....*					
595.00 .....*						2.99 .....*					
476.00 .....*						2.39 .....*					
357.00 .....*						1.79 .....*					
238.00 .....*						1.20 .....*					
119.00 .....*						0.60 .....*					
1 5 10 15 20 25 30 35 40 45 50 55 60 s						1 5 10 15 20 25 30 35 40 45 50 55 60 s					
TX M1B						TX 8					
3.60 .....*						150.00 .....*					
3.00 .....*						125.00 .....*					
2.40 .....*						100.00 .....*					
1.80 .....*						75.00 .....*					
1.20 .....*						50.00 .....*					
0.60 .....*						25.00 .....*					
1 5 10 15 20 25 30 35 40 45 50 55 60 s						1 5 10 15 20 25 30 35 40 45 50 55 60 s					
Press d to enable detailed statistics						Press d to enable detailed statistics					
^ prev interface, v next interface, <- prev node, -> next node, ? help						^ prev interface, v next interface, <- prev node, -> next node, ? help					

## DDoS mitigation start

An *ACTIVE* attack with the new ID will appear in Flowmon DDoS defender 'Active attacks' screen. Flowmon dynamically provisions AFM DDoS profile and VS, and initiates traffic diversion to AFM using BGP advertisement

Flowmon DDoS Defender									
Gold Support service will expire soon! Gold Support service will expire in 6 days!									
Attack List									
ID	Attack status	Start time	End time	Segment	Action status			User comment	Tools
17	ACTIVE	2018-02-09 09:41:00	Active	test_network	Detected	Mitigation Start	Detected		
16	ENDED	2018-02-06 14:28:00	2018-02-06 14:39:32	test_network	Detected	Mitigation Start	Detected		
15	ENDED	2018-02-05 11:37:00	2018-02-05 11:46:04	test_network	Detected	Mitigation Start	Not Active		
14	ENDED	2018-01-24 09:47:00	2018-01-24 09:55:32	test_network	Detected	Mitigation Start	Detected		

### Action status

**Selected subnets**

10.1.30.0/24

**Scrubbing center actions**

- Locking AFM
- Connecting to main device
- Configuring subnet 10.1.30.0/24
- Creating DDoS Profile
- Creating Virtual Server
- Disconnecting from device
- Unlocking AFM

**Redirection actions**

- Locking vyos1\_router
- Applying redirection
- Unlocking vyos1\_router

Status: Success

Close

- ```
show ip bgp

vyos@vrouter1:~$ show ip bgp
[ BGP table version is 0, local router ID is 10.1.10.243
Status codes: s suppressed, d damped, h history, * valid, > best, i - internal,
               r RIB-failure, S Stale, R Removed
Origin codes: i - IGP, e - EGP, ? - incomplete
```

```

Network      Next Hop      Metric LocPrf Weight Path
*> 0.0.0.0    10.1.1.1      0          32768 ?
*> 10.1.10.0/24 0.0.0.0      1          32768 i
*>i10.1.30.0/24 10.1.20.245   100         0 i
*             10.1.20.244   1           0 2 i

```

- As traffic is being routed through AFM, Router2 shows no significant network activity while Router1 still experiences high traffic load

The figure consists of two side-by-side terminal windows showing network statistics for two routers, router1 and router2.

**Router 1 (Left Terminal):**

- Interface: eth4 at vrouter1
- Summary Table:

|   | Interface | RX Rate  | RX #  | TX Rate  | TX #  |
|---|-----------|----------|-------|----------|-------|
| 0 | eth3      | 117.00B  | 1     | 832.00B  | 8     |
| 1 | eth4      | 499.00B  | 8     | 57.56MIB | 48133 |
| 2 | eth5      | 90.14MIB | 75372 | 0.00B    | 0     |

- Source: local
- Detailed RX/TX Statistics (Router1):

| RX     | TX     |
|--------|--------|
| 630.00 | 9.77   |
| 525.00 | 18.54  |
| 420.00 | 105.00 |
| 315.00 | 105.00 |
| 210.00 | 105.00 |
| 105.00 | 105.00 |

**Router 2 (Right Terminal):**

- Interface: eth4 at vrouter2
- Summary Table:

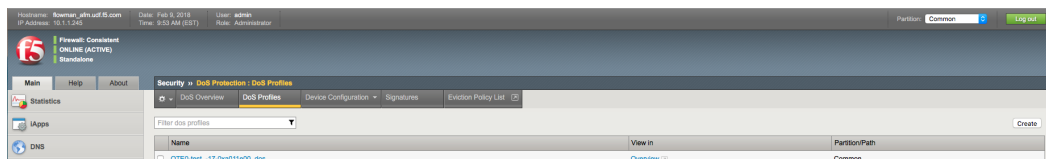
|   | Interface | RX Rate  | RX # | TX Rate  | TX #  |
|---|-----------|----------|------|----------|-------|
| 0 | eth2      | 119.00B  | 1    | 217.00B  | 0     |
| 1 | eth4      | 0.00B    | 0    | 10.22KIB | 48133 |
| 2 | eth5      | 10.32KIB | 16   | 41.00B   | 0     |

- Source: local
- Detailed RX/TX Statistics (Router2):

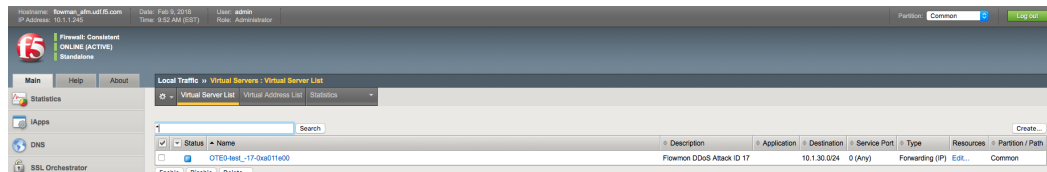
| RX    | TX   |
|-------|------|
| 54.00 | 1.71 |
| 45.00 | 1.71 |
| 36.00 | 1.71 |
| 27.00 | 1.71 |
| 18.00 | 1.71 |
| 9.00  | 1.71 |

**Note:** Flowmon uses iControl REST interface to provision necessary parameters in AFM

- In AFM TMUI Navigate to **Security** → **DoS protection** → **DoS profiles** and confirm that the DoS profile has been provisioned for the protected subnet



- In **Local Traffic** → **Virtual Servers** → **Virtual Server List** confirm that VS with corresponding Attack ID has been created



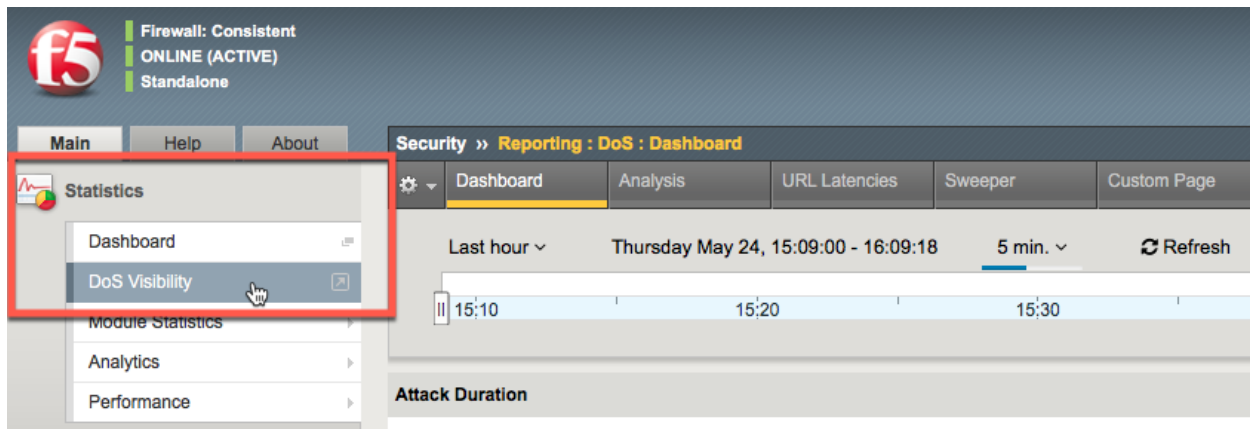
## AFM DDoS mitigation

In AFM TMUI navigate to **Security -> DoS Protection -> DoS Overview** and confirm that AFM is performing DoS mitigation using the provisioned DoS profile

| Security » DoS Protection : DoS Overview  |                  |          |         |          |                        |               |           |                      |                       |       |        |           |   |         |               |       |        |          |         |               |  |  |                       |  |  |  |   |           |           |                      |         |       |        |           |                            |               |          |         |          |                        |         |         |      |       |       |   |       |   |                   |                  |          |         |          |        |         |      |      |       |       |    |      |   |
|---|------------------|----------|---------|----------|------------------------|---------------|-----------|----------------------|-----------------------|-------|--------|-----------|---|---------|---------------|-------|--------|----------|---------|---------------|--|--|-----------------------|--|--|--|---|-----------|-----------|----------------------|---------|-------|--------|-----------|----------------------------|---------------|----------|---------|----------|------------------------|---------|---------|------|-------|-------|---|-------|---|-------------------|------------------|----------|---------|----------|--------|---------|------|------|-------|-------|----|------|---|
| <div> <span>DoS Overview</span> <span>DoS Profiles</span> <span>Device Configuration</span> <span>Signatures</span> <span>Eviction Policy List</span> </div>  |                  |          |         |          |                        |               |           |                      |                       |       |        |           |   |         |               |       |        |          |         |               |  |  |                       |  |  |  |   |           |           |                      |         |       |        |           |                            |               |          |         |          |                        |         |         |      |       |       |   |       |   |                   |                  |          |         |          |        |         |      |      |       |       |    |      |   |
| <div> <div>Filter Type: DoS Attack</div> <div>Auto Refresh: Disabled <span>Refresh</span></div> </div>  |                  |          |         |          |                        |               |           |                      |                       |       |        |           |   |         |               |       |        |          |         |               |  |  |                       |  |  |  |   |           |           |                      |         |       |        |           |                            |               |          |         |          |                        |         |         |      |       |       |   |       |   |                   |                  |          |         |          |        |         |      |      |       |       |    |      |   |
| <div> <div>Enter Vector Name</div> <table> <tr> <th rowspan="2">Profile</th><th rowspan="2">Attack Vector</th><th rowspan="2">State</th><th rowspan="2">Family</th><th rowspan="2">Learning</th><th rowspan="2">Context</th><th colspan="3">Attack Status</th><th colspan="4">Average Aggregate EPS</th><th rowspan="2">C</th></tr> <tr> <th>Aggregate</th><th>Bad Actor</th><th>Attacked Destination</th><th>Current</th><th>1 min</th><th>1 hour</th><th>Aggregate</th></tr> <tr> <td>OTE0-test_33-0xa011e00_dos</td><td>TCP SYN flood</td><td>Mitigate</td><td>Network</td><td>Learning</td><td>OTE0-test_33-0xa011e00</td><td>Dropped</td><td>Dropped</td><td>None</td><td>39506</td><td>38125</td><td>0</td><td>39506</td><td>8</td></tr> <tr> <td>dos-device-config</td><td>TCP SYN Oversize</td><td>Mitigate</td><td>Network</td><td>Learning</td><td>Device</td><td>Dropped</td><td>None</td><td>None</td><td>42515</td><td>40185</td><td>68</td><td>2515</td><td>0</td></tr> </table> </div> |                  |          |         |          |                        |               |           |                      |                       |       |        |           |   | Profile | Attack Vector | State | Family | Learning | Context | Attack Status |  |  | Average Aggregate EPS |  |  |  | C | Aggregate | Bad Actor | Attacked Destination | Current | 1 min | 1 hour | Aggregate | OTE0-test_33-0xa011e00_dos | TCP SYN flood | Mitigate | Network | Learning | OTE0-test_33-0xa011e00 | Dropped | Dropped | None | 39506 | 38125 | 0 | 39506 | 8 | dos-device-config | TCP SYN Oversize | Mitigate | Network | Learning | Device | Dropped | None | None | 42515 | 40185 | 68 | 2515 | 0 |
| Profile   | Attack Vector    | State    | Family  | Learning | Context                | Attack Status |           |                      | Average Aggregate EPS |       |        |           | C |         |               |       |        |          |         |               |  |  |                       |  |  |  |   |           |           |                      |         |       |        |           |                            |               |          |         |          |                        |         |         |      |       |       |   |       |   |                   |                  |          |         |          |        |         |      |      |       |       |    |      |   |
|   |                  |          |         |          |                        | Aggregate     | Bad Actor | Attacked Destination | Current               | 1 min | 1 hour | Aggregate |   |         |               |       |        |          |         |               |  |  |                       |  |  |  |   |           |           |                      |         |       |        |           |                            |               |          |         |          |                        |         |         |      |       |       |   |       |   |                   |                  |          |         |          |        |         |      |      |       |       |    |      |   |
| OTE0-test_33-0xa011e00_dos  | TCP SYN flood    | Mitigate | Network | Learning | OTE0-test_33-0xa011e00 | Dropped       | Dropped   | None                 | 39506                 | 38125 | 0      | 39506     | 8 |         |               |       |        |          |         |               |  |  |                       |  |  |  |   |           |           |                      |         |       |        |           |                            |               |          |         |          |                        |         |         |      |       |       |   |       |   |                   |                  |          |         |          |        |         |      |      |       |       |    |      |   |
| dos-device-config   | TCP SYN Oversize | Mitigate | Network | Learning | Device                 | Dropped       | None      | None                 | 42515                 | 40185 | 68     | 2515      | 0 |         |               |       |        |          |         |               |  |  |                       |  |  |  |   |           |           |                      |         |       |        |           |                            |               |          |         |          |                        |         |         |      |       |       |   |       |   |                   |                  |          |         |          |        |         |      |      |       |       |    |      |   |

**Note:** *Statistics -> DoS Visibility* TMUI menu provides graphical attack data

It may take up to ~5 minutes for DoS Visibility Dashboard to show our simulated DDoS attack. You may need to click *Refresh* for data to appear



### 4.3.3 Attack stop

#### Stop SYN flood

Press (Ctrl-C) to finish the attack. Traffic will drop on Router1

```
bmon 2.0.1  
interface: eth1 at vroutelr1  
  
# Interface RX Rate RX # TX Rate TX #  
  
vroutelr1 (source: local)  
0 eth0 65.00B 0 345.00B 0  
1 eth1 0.00B 0 0.00B 0  
2 eth2 0.00B 0 0.00B 0  
  
RX B  
564.00 .....*.*****.  
470.00 .....*****.*  
376.00 .....*****.*  
282.00 .....*****.  
188.00 .....*****.  
94.00 .....*,*..... [-0.03%]  
1 5 10 15 20 25 30 35 40 45 50 55 60 s  
  
TX MiB  
1.85 .....  
1.54 .....  
1.23 .....  
0.93 .....  
0.62 .....  
0.31 ..... [-0.03%]  
1 5 10 15 20 25 30 35 40 45 50 55 60 s  
  
Press d to enable detailed statistics  
^ prev interface, v next interface, <- prev node, -> next node, ? help
```

**Note:** STOP HERE. It will take 5-10 minutes for Flowmon to mark the attack as *NOT ACTIVE*. This is done in order to avoid 'flip-flop' effect in repeated attack situation

## Mitigation stop

Flowmon DDoS Defender Attack List screen shows the current attack with status *NOT ACTIVE*. Attack will transition to *ENDED* state when Flowmon performs *Mitigation Stop* routine

**Flowmon**

DDoS Defender

Gold Support service will expire soon! Gold Support service will expire in 6 days!

Attack List

Report chapters

Configuration

Attack list

Search

| ID | Attack status | Start time          | End time            | Segment      | Action status  | User comment | Tools |
|----|---------------|---------------------|---------------------|--------------|--|--------------|-------|
| 17 | NOT ACTIVE    | 2018-02-09 09:41:00 | 2018-02-09 10:04:33 | test_network | Detected,                       Mitigation Start,                       Detected,                       Detected,                       Not Active |              |       |

**Flowmon**

DDoS Defender

Gold Support service will expire soon! Gold Support service will expire in 6 days!

Attack List

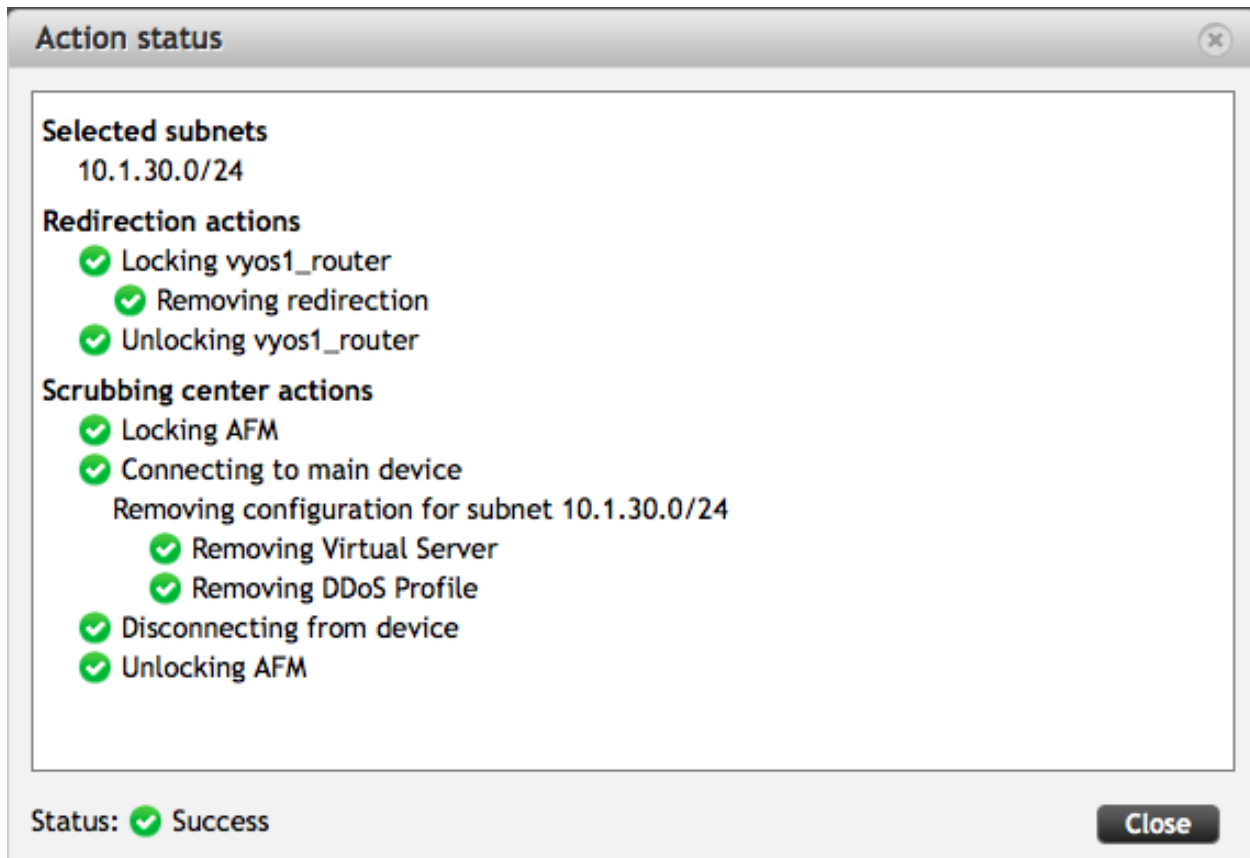
Report chapters

Configuration

Attack list

Search

| ID | Attack status | Start time          | End time            | Segment      | Action status  | User comment | Tools |
|----|---------------|---------------------|---------------------|--------------|--|--------------|-------|
| 17 | ENDED         | 2018-02-09 09:41:00 | 2018-02-09 10:04:33 | test_network | Detected,                       Mitigation Start,                       Detected,                       Detected,                       Not Active,                       Mitigation Stop,                       Ended |              |       |



*\*It typically takes ~ 5min for Flowmon DDoS Defender to update attack status*

### AFM configuration, BGP route removal

As part of *Mitigation Stop* routine Flowmon removes BGP route from Router1 and Virtual Server and DDoS Profile from AFM

show ip bgp

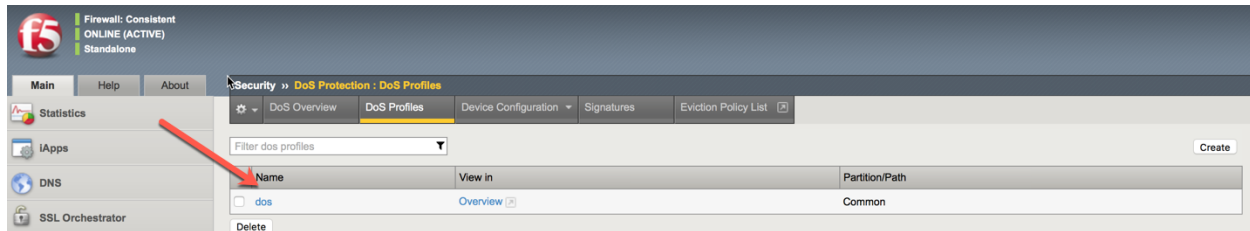
```
vyos@vrouter1:~$ show ip bgp
BGP table version is 0, local router ID is 10.1.10.243
Status codes: s suppressed, d damped, h history, * valid, > best, i - internal,
               r RIB-failure, S Stale, R Removed
Origin codes: i - IGP, e - EGP, ? - incomplete
```

| Network         | Next Hop    | Metric | LocPrf | Weight | Path |
|-----------------|-------------|--------|--------|--------|------|
| *> 0.0.0.0      | 10.1.1.1    | 0      |        | 32768  | ?    |
| *> 10.1.10.0/24 | 0.0.0.0     | 1      |        | 32768  | i    |
| *> 10.1.30.0/24 | 10.1.20.244 | 1      |        | 0      | 2 i  |

Total number of prefixes 3

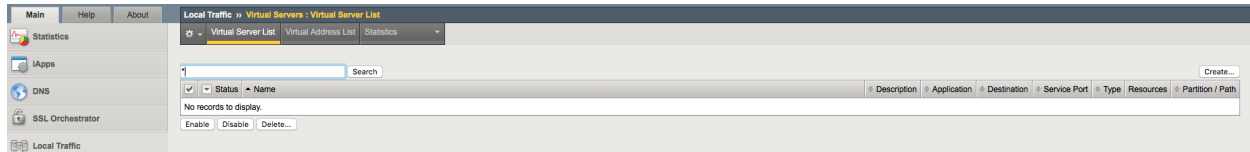
In AFM TMUI navigate to Security → DoS Protection → DoS Profiles

Verify that only default “dos” profile present



**In AFM TMUI navigate to Local Traffic → Virtual Servers → Virtual Server List**

Verify that Virtual Server matching Attack ID has been removed



**Congratulations! You have successfully completed the lab!**



